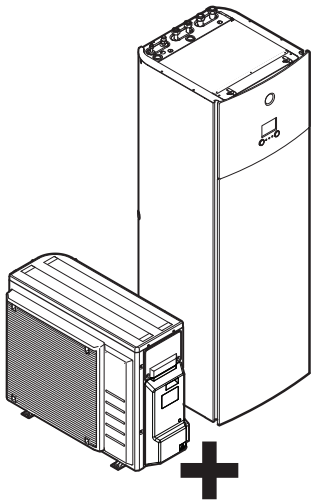
Installer reference guide

Daikin Altherma 3 R F



ERGA04EAV3(A)
ERGA06EAV3(A)
ERGA08EAV3(A)

EHVH04S18E*6V
EHVH04S23E*6V

EHVH08S18E*6V
EHVH08S23E*6V
EHVH08S18E*9W
EHVH08S23E*9W

EHVX04S18E*3V
EHVX04S18E*6V(G)
EHVX04S23E*3V
EHVX04S23E*6V(G)

EHVX08S18E*6V(G)
EHVX08S23E*6V(G)
EHVX08S18E*9W
EHVX08S23E*9W

Table of contents

1 General safety precautions

In this chapter

1.1 About the documentation

- The original documentation is written in English. All other languages are translations.
- The precautions described in this document cover very important topics, follow them carefully.
- The installation of the system, and all activities described in the installation manual and in the installer reference guide MUST be performed by an authorised installer.

1.1.1 Meaning of warnings and symbols

DANGER

Indicates a situation that results in death or serious injury.

DANGER: RISK OF ELECTROCUTION

Indicates a situation that could result in electrocution.

DANGER: RISK OF BURNING/SCALDING

Indicates a situation that could result in burning/scalding because of extreme hot or cold temperatures.

DANGER: RISK OF EXPLOSION

Indicates a situation that could result in explosion.

WARNING

Indicates a situation that could result in death or serious injury.

WARNING: FLAMMABLE MATERIAL

CAUTION

Indicates a situation that could result in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

Indicates a situation that could result in equipment or property damage.

INFORMATION

Indicates useful tips or additional information.

Symbols used on the unit:

Symbol	Explanation
	Before installation, read the installation and operation manual, and the wiring instruction sheet.
	Before performing maintenance and service tasks, read the service manual.
	For more information, see the installer and user reference guide.
	The unit contains rotating parts. Be careful when servicing or inspecting the unit.

Symbols used in the documentation:

Symbol	Explanation
	Indicates a figure title or a reference to it. **Example:** "1–3 Figure title" means "Figure 3 in chapter 1".
	Indicates a table title or a reference to it. **Example:** "1–3 Table title" means "Table 3 in chapter 1".

1.2 For the installer

1.2.1 General

If you are NOT sure how to install or operate the unit, contact your dealer.

DANGER: RISK OF BURNING/SCALDING

- Do NOT touch the refrigerant piping, water piping or internal parts during and immediately after operation. It could be too hot or too cold. Give it time to return to normal temperature. If you must touch it, wear protective gloves.
- Do NOT touch any accidental leaking refrigerant.

WARNING

Improper installation or attachment of equipment or accessories could result in electrical shock, short-circuit, leaks, fire or other damage to the equipment. Only use accessories, optional equipment and spare parts made or approved by Daikin.

WARNING

Make sure installation, testing and applied materials comply with applicable legislation (on top of the instructions described in the Daikin documentation).

CAUTION

Wear adequate personal protective equipment (protective gloves, safety glasses,...) when installing, maintaining or servicing the system.

WARNING

Tear apart and throw away plastic packaging bags so that nobody, especially children, can play with them. Possible risk: suffocation.

WARNING

Provide adequate measures to prevent that the unit can be used as a shelter by small animals. Small animals that make contact with electrical parts can cause malfunctions, smoke or fire.

CAUTION

Do NOT touch the air inlet or aluminium fins of the unit.

CAUTION

- Do NOT place any objects or equipment on top of the unit.
- Do NOT sit, climb or stand on the unit.

NOTICE

Works executed on the outdoor unit are best done under dry weather conditions to avoid water ingress.

In accordance with the applicable legislation, it might be necessary to provide a logbook with the product containing at least: information on maintenance, repair work, results of tests, stand-by periods,...

Also, at least, following information MUST be provided at an accessible place at the product:

- Instructions for shutting down the system in case of an emergency
- Name and address of fire department, police and hospital
- Name, address and day and night telephone numbers for obtaining service

In Europe, EN378 provides the necessary guidance for this logbook.

1.2.2 Installation site

- Provide sufficient space around the unit for servicing and air circulation.
- Make sure the installation site withstands the weight and vibration of the unit.
- Make sure the area is well ventilated. Do NOT block any ventilation openings.
- Make sure the unit is level.

Do NOT install the unit in the following places:

- In potentially explosive atmospheres.
- In places where there is machinery that emits electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may disturb the control system, and cause malfunction of the equipment.
- In places where there is a risk of fire due to the leakage of flammable gases (example: thinner or gasoline), carbon fibre, ignitable dust.

- In places where corrosive gas (example: sulphurous acid gas) is produced. Corrosion of copper pipes or soldered parts may cause the refrigerant to leak.

1.2.3 Refrigerant — in case of R410A or R32

If applicable. See the installation manual or installer reference guide of your application for more information.

NOTICE

Make sure refrigerant piping installation complies with applicable legislation. In Europe, EN378 is the applicable standard.

NOTICE

Make sure the field piping and connections are NOT subjected to stress.

WARNING

During tests, NEVER pressurize the product with a pressure higher than the maximum allowable pressure (as indicated on the nameplate of the unit).

WARNING

Take sufficient precautions in case of refrigerant leakage. If refrigerant gas leaks, ventilate the area immediately. Possible risks:

- Excessive refrigerant concentrations in a closed room can lead to oxygen deficiency.
- Toxic gas might be produced if refrigerant gas comes into contact with fire.

DANGER: RISK OF EXPLOSION

Pump down – Refrigerant leakage. If you want to pump down the system, and there is a leak in the refrigerant circuit:

- Do NOT use the unit's automatic pump down function, with which you can collect all refrigerant from the system into the outdoor unit. **Possible consequence:** Self-combustion and explosion of the compressor because of air going into the operating compressor.
- Use a separate recovery system so that the unit's compressor does NOT have to operate.

WARNING

ALWAYS recover the refrigerant. Do NOT release them directly into the environment. Use a vacuum pump to evacuate the installation.

NOTICE

After all the piping has been connected, make sure there is no gas leak. Use nitrogen to perform a gas leak detection.

NOTICE

- To avoid compressor breakdown, do NOT charge more than the specified amount of refrigerant.
- When the refrigerant system is to be opened, refrigerant MUST be treated according to the applicable legislation.

WARNING

Make sure there is no oxygen in the system. Refrigerant may only be charged after performing the leak test and the vacuum drying.

Possible consequence: Self-combustion and explosion of the compressor because of oxygen going into the operating compressor.

- In case recharge is required, see the nameplate of the unit. It states the type of refrigerant and necessary amount.
- The unit is factory charged with refrigerant and depending on pipe sizes and pipe lengths some systems require additional charging of refrigerant.
- Only use tools exclusively for the refrigerant type used in the system, this to ensure pressure resistance and prevent foreign materials from entering into the system.
- Charge the liquid refrigerant as follows:

If	Then
A siphon tube is present (i.e., the cylinder is marked with "Liquid filling siphon attached")	Charge with the cylinder upright. 
A siphon tube is NOT present	Charge with the cylinder upside down. 

- Open refrigerant cylinders slowly.
- Charge the refrigerant in liquid form. Adding it in gas form may prevent normal operation.

CAUTION

When the refrigerant charging procedure is done or when pausing, close the valve of the refrigerant tank immediately. If the valve is NOT closed immediately, remaining pressure might charge additional refrigerant. **Possible consequence:** Incorrect refrigerant amount.

1.2.4 Water

If applicable. See the installation manual or installer reference guide of your application for more information.

NOTICE

Make sure water quality complies with EU directive 98/83 EC.

1.2.5 Electrical

DANGER: RISK OF ELECTROCUTION

- Turn OFF all power supply before removing the switch box cover, connecting electrical wiring or touching electrical parts.
- Disconnect the power supply for more than 10 minutes, and measure the voltage at the terminals of main circuit capacitors or electrical components before servicing. The voltage MUST be less than 50 V DC before you can touch electrical components. For the location of the terminals, see the wiring diagram.
- Do NOT touch electrical components with wet hands.
- Do NOT leave the unit unattended when the service cover is removed.

WARNING

If NOT factory installed, a main switch or other means for disconnection, having a contact separation in all poles providing full disconnection under overvoltage category III condition, MUST be installed in the fixed wiring.

WARNING

- ONLY use copper wires.
- Make sure the field wiring complies with the applicable legislation.
- All field wiring MUST be performed in accordance with the wiring diagram supplied with the product.
- NEVER squeeze bundled cables and make sure they do NOT come in contact with the piping and sharp edges. Make sure no external pressure is applied to the terminal connections.
- Make sure to install earth wiring. Do NOT earth the unit to a utility pipe, surge absorber, or telephone earth. Incomplete earth may cause electrical shock.
- Make sure to use a dedicated power circuit. NEVER use a power supply shared by another appliance.
- Make sure to install the required fuses or circuit breakers.
- Make sure to install an earth leakage protector. Failure to do so may cause electrical shock or fire.
- When installing the earth leakage protector, make sure it is compatible with the inverter (resistant to high frequency electric noise) to avoid unnecessary opening of the earth leakage protector.

CAUTION

- When connecting the power supply: connect the earth cable first, before making the current-carrying connections.
- When disconnecting the power supply: disconnect the current-carrying cables first, before separating the earth connection.
- The length of the conductors between the power supply stress relief and the terminal block itself must be as such that the current-carrying wires are tautened before the earth wire is in case the power supply is pulled loose from the stress relief.

NOTICE

Precautions when laying power wiring:

- Do NOT connect wiring of different thicknesses to the power terminal block (slack in the power wiring may cause abnormal heat).
- When connecting wiring which is the same thickness, do as shown in the figure above.
- For wiring, use the designated power wire and connect firmly, then secure to prevent outside pressure being exerted on the terminal board.
- Use an appropriate screwdriver for tightening the terminal screws. A screwdriver with a small head will damage the head and make proper tightening impossible.
- Over-tightening the terminal screws may break them.

Install power cables at least 1 m away from televisions or radios to prevent interference. Depending on the radio waves, a distance of 1 m may not be sufficient.

WARNING

- After finishing the electrical work, confirm that each electrical component and terminal inside the electrical components box is connected securely.
- Make sure all covers are closed before starting up the unit.

NOTICE

Only applicable if the power supply is three-phase, and the compressor has an ON/OFF starting method.

If there exists the possibility of reversed phase after a momentary black out and the power goes on and off while the product is operating, attach a reversed phase protection circuit locally. Running the product in reversed phase can break the compressor and other parts.

2 About the documentation

In this chapter

2.1 About this document

Target audience

Authorised installers

Documentation set

This document is part of a documentation set. The complete set consists of:

- **General safety precautions:**
  - Safety instructions that you must read before installing
  - Format: Paper (in the box of the indoor unit)
- **Indoor unit installation manual:**
  - Installation instructions
  - Format: Paper (in the box of the indoor unit)
- **Outdoor unit installation manual:**
  - Installation instructions
  - Format: Paper (in the box of the outdoor unit)
- **Installer reference guide:**
  - Preparation of the installation, good practices, reference data,...
  - Format: Digital files on http://www.daikineurope.com/support-and-manuals/product-information/
- **Addendum book for optional equipment:**
  - Additional info about how to install optional equipment
  - Format: Paper (in the box of the indoor unit) + Digital files on http://www.daikineurope.com/support-and-manuals/product-information/

Latest revisions of the supplied documentation may be available on the regional Daikin website or via your dealer.

The original documentation is written in English. All other languages are translations.

Technical engineering data

- A **subset** of the latest technical data is available on the regional Daikin website (publicly accessible).
- The **full set** of latest technical data is available on the Daikin Business Portal (authentication required).

2.2 Installer reference guide at a glance

Chapter	Description
General safety precautions	Safety instructions that you must read before installing
About the documentation	What documentation exists for the installer
About the box	How to unpack the units and remove their accessories
About the units and options	▪ How to identify the units ▪ Possible combinations of units and options
Application guidelines	Various installation setups of the system
Preparation	What to do and know before going on-site
Installation	What to do and know to install the system
Configuration	What to do and know to configure the system after it is installed
Commissioning	What to do and know to commission the system after it is configured
Hand-over to the user	What to give and explain to the user
Maintenance and service	How to maintain and service the units
Troubleshooting	What to do in case of problems
Disposal	How to dispose of the system
Technical data	Specifications of the system
Glossary	Definition of terms
Field settings table	Table to be filled in by the installer, and kept for future reference **Note:** There is also an installer settings table in the user reference guide. This table has to be filled in by the installer and handed over to the user.

3 Specific installer safety instructions

Always observe the following safety instructions and regulations.

Application guidelines (see "6 Application guidelines" [▸ 29])

CAUTION

If there is more than one leaving water zone, ALWAYS install a mixing valve station in the main zone to decrease (in heating)/increase (in cooling) the leaving water temperature when the additional zone has demand.

Installation site (see "7.1 Preparing the installation site" [▸ 54])

WARNING

The appliance shall be stored in a room without continuously operating ignition sources (example: open flames, an operating gas appliance or an operating electric heater).

WARNING

DO NOT reuse refrigerant piping that has been used with any other refrigerant. Replace the refrigerant pipes or clean thoroughly.

WARNING

- Do NOT pierce or burn.
- Do NOT use means to accelerate the defrosting process or to clean the equipment, other than those recommended by the manufacturer.
- Be aware that R32 refrigerant does NOT contain an odour.

WARNING

The appliance shall be stored so as to prevent mechanical damage and in a well-ventilated room without continuously operating ignition sources (example: open flames, an operating gas appliance or an operating electric heater) and have a room size as specified below.

Charging refrigerant (see "8.5 Charging refrigerant" [▸ 90])

WARNING

If the total refrigerant charge in the system is ≥1.84 kg (i.e. if the piping length is ≥27 m), you need to comply with the minimum floor area requirements for the indoor unit. For more information, see "7.1.3 Installation site requirements of the indoor unit" [▸ 58].

CAUTION

To avoid compressor breakdown, do NOT charge more than the specified amount of refrigerant.

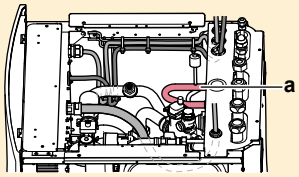
WARNING

- Only use R32 as refrigerant. Other substances may cause explosions and accidents.
- R32 contains fluorinated greenhouse gases. Its global warming potential (GWP) value is 675. Do NOT vent these gases into the atmosphere.
- When charging refrigerant, ALWAYS use protective gloves and safety glasses.

Electrical installation (see "9 Electrical installation" [▸ 97])

WARNING

Make sure that the electrical wiring does NOT touch the refrigerant gas pipe, which can be very hot.



a Refrigerant gas pipe

DANGER: RISK OF ELECTROCUTION

WARNING

ALWAYS use multicore cable for power supply cables.

CAUTION

To guarantee the unit is completely earthed, always connect the backup heater power supply and the earth cable.

WARNING

The backup heater MUST have a dedicated power supply and MUST be protected by the safety devices required by the applicable legislation.

Configuration (see "10 Configuration" [▸ 126])

CAUTION

The disinfection function settings MUST be configured by the installer according to the applicable legislation.

CAUTION

Be sure that the disinfection function start time [5.7.3] with defined duration [5.7.5] is NOT interrupted by possible domestic hot water demand.

WARNING

Be aware that the domestic hot water temperature at the hot water tap will be equal to the value selected in field setting [2-03] after a disinfection operation.

When the high domestic hot water temperature can be a potential risk for human injuries, a mixing valve (field supply) shall be installed at the hot water outlet connection of the domestic hot water tank. This mixing valve shall secure that the hot water temperature at the hot water tap never rise above a set maximum value. This maximum allowable hot water temperature shall be selected according to the applicable legislation.

CAUTION

Make sure to observe all rules mentioned in application guideline 5 when bivalent operation function is enabled.

Daikin shall NOT be held liable for any damage resulting from failure to observe this rule.

Maintenance and service (see "13 Maintenance and service" [▸ 218])

CAUTION

Water coming out of the valve may be very hot.

WARNING

If the internal wiring is damaged, it has to be replaced by the manufacturer, its service agent or similarly qualified persons.

CAUTION

Although the water circuit is drained, some water may be spilled when removing the magnetic filter/dirt separator from the filter housing. ALWAYS clean up spilled water.

CAUTION

To protect the piping connected to the magnetic filter/dirt separator from damage it is recommended to perform this procedure with the magnetic filter/dirt separator removed from the unit.

CAUTION

Opening the magnetic filter/dirt separator is ONLY required in case of severe issues. Preferably this action is never to be done during the complete lifetime of the magnetic filter/dirt separator.

CAUTION

Check the condition of the O-rings and replace if needed. Apply water to the O-rings before installation.

CAUTION

Make sure to open the valve (if equipped) towards the expansion vessel, otherwise the overpressure will be generated.

Troubleshooting (see "14 Troubleshooting" [▸ 225])

WARNING

Prevent hazards due to inadvertent resetting of the thermal cut-out: power to this appliance MUST NOT be supplied through an external switching device, such as a timer, or connected to a circuit that is regularly turned ON and OFF by the utility.

WARNING

- When carrying out an inspection on the switch box of the unit, ALWAYS make sure that the unit is disconnected from the mains. Turn off the respective circuit breaker.
- When a safety device was activated, stop the unit and find out why the safety device was activated before resetting it. NEVER shunt safety devices or change their values to a value other than the factory default setting. If you are unable to find the cause of the problem, call your dealer.

WARNING

Air purging heat emitters or collectors. Before you purge air from heat emitters or collectors, check if or is displayed on the home screen of the user interface.

- If not, you can purge air immediately.
- If yes, make sure that the room where you want to purge air is sufficiently ventilated. **Reason:** Refrigerant might leak into the water circuit, and subsequently into the room when you purge air from the heat emitters or collectors.

Disposal (see "15 Disposal" [▸ 236])

DANGER: RISK OF EXPLOSION

Pump down – Refrigerant leakage. If you want to pump down the system, and there is a leak in the refrigerant circuit:

- Do NOT use the unit's automatic pump down function, with which you can collect all refrigerant from the system into the outdoor unit. **Possible consequence:** Self-combustion and explosion of the compressor because of air going into the operating compressor.
- Use a separate recovery system so that the unit's compressor does NOT have to operate.

3.1 Instructions for equipment using R32 refrigerant

WARNING: FLAMMABLE MATERIAL

The refrigerant inside this unit is mildly flammable.

WARNING

- Do NOT pierce or burn.
- Do NOT use means to accelerate the defrosting process or to clean the equipment, other than those recommended by the manufacturer.
- Be aware that R32 refrigerant does NOT contain an odour.

WARNING

The appliance shall be stored so as to prevent mechanical damage and in a well-ventilated room without continuously operating ignition sources (example: open flames, an operating gas appliance or an operating electric heater) and have a room size as specified below.

WARNING

Make sure installation, servicing, maintenance and repair comply with instructions from Daikin and with applicable legislation (for example national gas regulation) and are executed only by authorised persons.

WARNING

If one or more rooms are connected to the unit using a duct system, make sure:

- there are no operating ignition sources (example: open flames, an operating gas appliance or an operating electric heater) in case the floor area is less than the minimum floor area A (m^2).
- no auxiliary devices, which may be a potential ignition source, are installed in the duct work (example: hot surfaces with a temperature exceeding 700°C and electric switching device);
- only auxiliary devices approved by the manufacturer are used in the duct work;
- air inlet AND outlet are connected directly to the same room by ducting. Do NOT use spaces such as a false ceiling as a duct for the air inlet or outlet.

NOTICE

- Precautions shall be taken to avoid excessive vibration or pulsation to refrigeration piping.
- Protection devices, piping and fittings shall be protected as far as possible against adverse environmental effects.
- Provision shall be made for expansion and contraction of long runs of piping.
- Piping in refrigerating systems shall be designed and installed such as to minimise the likelihood of hydraulic shock damaging the system.
- The indoor equipment and pipes shall be securely mounted and guarded such that accidental rupture of equipment or pipes cannot occur from events such as moving furniture or reconstruction activities.

CAUTION

Do NOT use potential sources of ignition in searching for or detection of refrigerant leaks.

NOTICE

- Do NOT re-use joints and copper gaskets which have been used already.
- Joints made in installation between parts of refrigerant system shall be accessible for maintenance purposes.

4 About the box

In this chapter

4.1 Overview: About the box

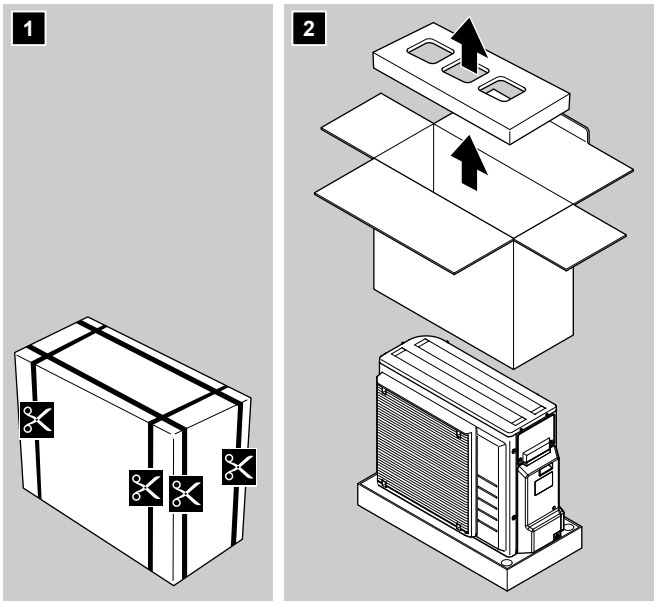
This chapter describes what you have to do after the boxes with the outdoor and indoor unit are delivered on-site.

Keep the following in mind:

- At delivery, the unit MUST be checked for damage. Any damage MUST be reported immediately to the claims agent of the carrier.
- Bring the packed unit as close as possible to its final installation position to prevent damage during transport.
- Prepare the path along which you want to bring the unit inside in advance.

4.2 Outdoor unit

4.2.1 To unpack the outdoor unit

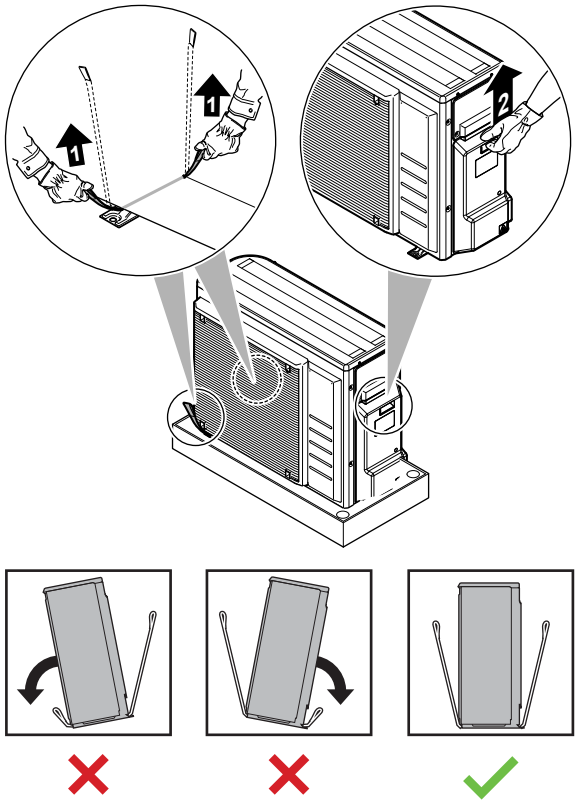


4.2.2 To handle the outdoor unit

CAUTION

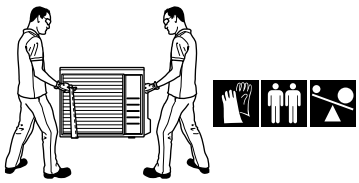
To avoid injury, do NOT touch the air inlet or aluminium fins of the unit.

1 Handle the unit using the sling to the left and the handle to the right. Pull up both sides of the sling at the same time to prevent disconnection of the sling from the unit.



2 While handling the unit:

- Keep both sides of the sling level.
- Keep your back straight.

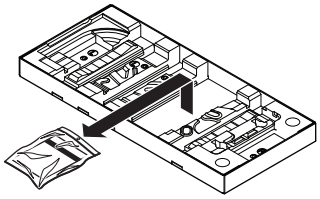


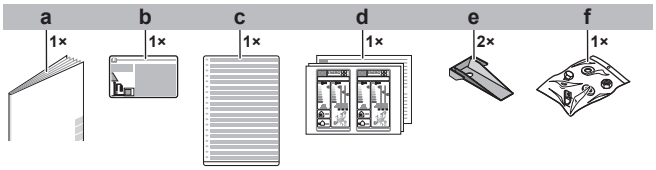
3 After mounting the unit, remove the sling from the unit by pulling 1 side of the sling.

4.2.3 To remove the accessories from the outdoor unit

1 Lift the outdoor unit. See "4.2.2 To handle the outdoor unit" [▸ 21].

2 Remove the accessories at the bottom of the package.

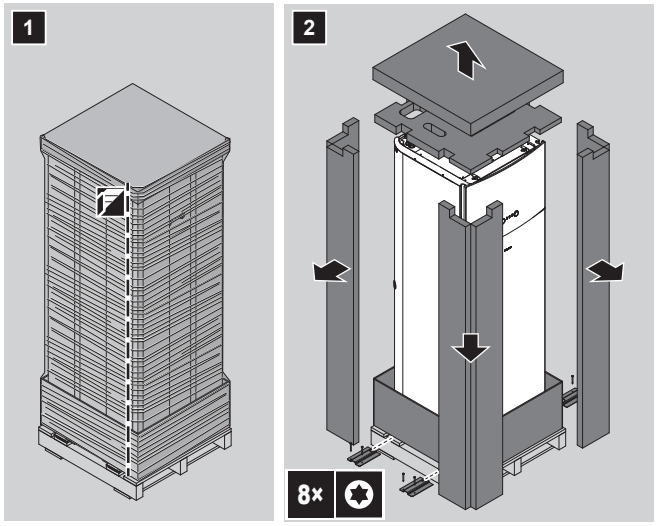




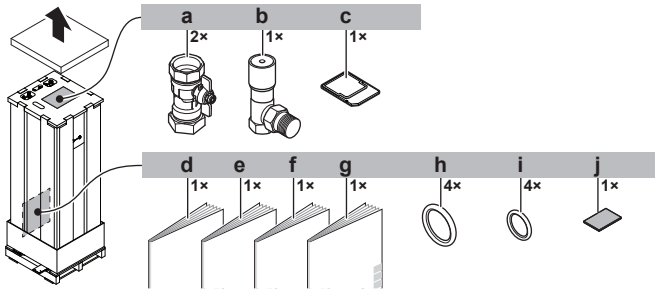
a Outdoor unit installation manual
b Fluorinated greenhouse gases label
c Multilingual fluorinated greenhouse gases label
d Energy label
e Unit mounting plate
f Bolts, nuts, washers, spring washers and wire clamp

4.3 Indoor unit

4.3.1 To unpack the indoor unit



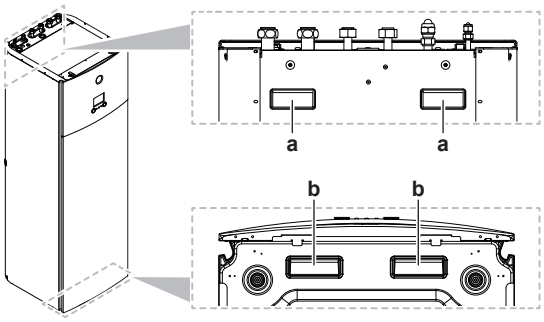
4.3.2 To remove the accessories from the indoor unit



a Shut-off valves for water circuit
b Overpressure bypass valve
c WLAN cartridge
d General safety precautions
e Addendum book for optional equipment
f Indoor unit installation manual
g Operation manual
h Sealing rings for shut-off valves (space heating water circuit)
i Sealing rings for field-supplied shut-off valves (domestic hot water circuit)
j Sealing tape for low voltage wiring intake

4.3.3 To handle the indoor unit

Use the handles at the back and at the bottom to carry the unit.



a Handles at the back of the unit
b Handles at the bottom of the unit. Carefully tilt the unit to the back so that the handles become visible.

5 About the units and options

In this chapter

5.1 Overview: About the units and options

This chapter contains information about:

- Identifying the outdoor unit
- Identifying the indoor unit
- Combining the outdoor unit with options
- Combining the indoor unit with options

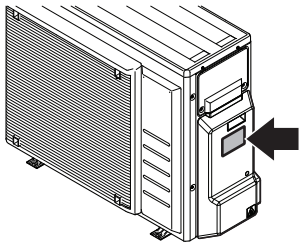
5.2 Identification

NOTICE

When installing or servicing several units at the same time, make sure NOT to switch the service panels between different models.

5.2.1 Identification label: Outdoor unit

Location



Model identification

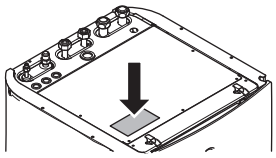
Example: ER G A 06 DA V3 A

Code	Explanation
ER	European split outdoor pair heat pump
G	Medium water temperature – ambient zone: –10~–20°C
A	Refrigerant R32
06	Capacity class
DA	Model series
V3	Power supply

Code	Explanation
A	A=Austrian model [—]=Non-Austrian model

5.2.2 Identification label: Indoor unit

Location



Model identification

Example: E HV X 04 S 18 EA 6V G

Code	Description
E	European model
HV	Floor-standing indoor unit with integrated tank
X	H=Heating only X=Heating/cooling
04	Capacity class
S	Integrated tank material: Stainless steel
18	Integrated tank volume
EA	Model series
6V	Backup heater model
G	G=Grey model [—]=White model

5.3 Combining units and options

INFORMATION

Certain options might not be available in your country.

5.3.1 Possible options for the outdoor unit

Drain pan kit (EKDP008D)

The drain pan kit is required to gather the drain from the outdoor unit. The drain pan kit consists of:

- Drain pan
- Installation brackets

For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the drain pan.

Drain pan heater (EKDPH008CA)

The drain pan heater is required to avoid freezing-up of the drain pan.

It is recommended to install this option in colder regions with possible low ambient temperatures or heavy snowfall.

For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the drain pan heater.

U-beams (EKFT008D)

The U-beams are installation brackets on which the outdoor unit can be installed.

It is recommended to install this option in colder regions with possible low ambient temperatures or heavy snowfall.

For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the outdoor unit.

Low sound cover (EKLN08A1)

In sound sensitive areas (e.g. near a bedroom), you can install the low sound cover to decrease the operation noise of the outdoor unit.

You can install the low sound cover:

- On mounting feet to the ground. This must withstand 200 kg.
- On brackets to the wall. This must withstand 200 kg.

If you install the low sound cover, you also need to install one of the following options:

- Recommended: Drain pan kit (with or without drain pan heater)
- U-beams

For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the low sound cover.

5.3.2 Possible options for the indoor unit

User interface used as room thermostat (BRC1HHDA)

- The user interface used as room thermostat can only be used in combination with the user interface connected to the indoor unit.
- The user interface used as room thermostat needs to be installed in the room that you want to control.

For installation instructions, see the installation and operation manual of the user interface used as room thermostat.

Room thermostat (EKRTWA, EKRTR1)

You can connect an optional room thermostat to the indoor unit. This thermostat can either be wired (EKRTWA) or wireless (EKRTR1).

For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the room thermostat and addendum book for optional equipment.

Remote sensor for wireless thermostat (EKRTETS)

You can use the remote indoor temperature sensor (EKRTETS) only in combination with the wireless thermostat (EKRTR1).

For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the room thermostat and the addendum book for optional equipment.

Digital I/O PCB (EKRP1HBAA)

The digital I/O PCB is required to provide following signals:

- Alarm output
- Space heating/cooling On/OFF output
- Changeover to external heat source

For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the digital I/O PCB and addendum book for optional equipment.

Demand PCB (EKRP1AHTA)

To enable the power saving consumption control by digital inputs you must install the demand PCB.

For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the demand PCB and addendum book for optional equipment.

Remote indoor sensor (KRCS01-1)

By default the internal user interface sensor will be used as room temperature sensor.

As an option the remote indoor sensor can be installed to measure the room temperature on another location.

For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the remote indoor sensor and addendum book for optional equipment.

INFORMATION

- The remote indoor sensor can only be used in case the user interface is configured with room thermostat functionality.
- You can only connect either the remote indoor sensor or the remote outdoor sensor.

Remote outdoor sensor (EKRSCA1)

By default the sensor inside the outdoor unit will be used to measure the outdoor temperature.

As an option the remote outdoor sensor can be installed to measure the outdoor temperature on another location (e.g. to avoid direct sunlight) to have an improved system behaviour.

For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the remote outdoor sensor and the addendum book for optional equipment.

INFORMATION

You can only connect either the remote indoor sensor or the remote outdoor sensor.

PC cable (EKPCCAB4)

The PC cable makes a connection between the switch box of the indoor unit and a PC. It gives the possibility to update the software of the indoor unit.

For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the PC cable.

Pipe bend kit (EKHVTC)

When the indoor unit is installed in a place with limited space, a pipe bend kit can be installed to facilitate the connection to the refrigerant liquid and gas connections of the indoor unit.

For installation instructions, see the instruction sheet of the pipe bend kit.

Heat pump convector (FWXV)

For providing space heating/cooling, it is possible to use heat pump convectors (FWXV).

For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the heat pump convectors, and the addendum book for optional equipment.

LAN adapter for smartphone control + Smart Grid applications (BRP069A61)

You can install this LAN adapter to:

- Control the system via a smartphone app.
- Use the system in various Smart Grid applications.

For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the LAN adapter.

LAN adapter for smartphone control (BRP069A62)

You can install this LAN adapter to control the system via a smartphone app.

For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the LAN adapter.

Conversion kit (EKHVCONV4)

Use the connection kit to convert a heating only model to a reversible model.

For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the conversion kit.

WLAN adapter module (BRP069A71)

A WLAN cartridge (to be plugged into the MMI) is delivered as indoor unit accessory. Alternatively (e.g. in case of weak signal strength), you can install the optional wireless LAN adapter module BRP069A71.

For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the WLAN adapter module and the addendum book for optional equipment.

Smart grid relay kit (EKRELSG)

The installation of the optional Smart grid relay kit is required in case of high voltage Smart grid contacts (EKRELSG).

For installation instructions, see "9.3.11 To connect a Smart Grid" [▸ 120].

5.3.3 Possible combinations of indoor unit and outdoor unit

Indoor unit	Outdoor unit		
	ERGA04	ERGA06	ERGA08
EHVH/X04	O	—	—
EHVH/X08	—	O	O

6 Application guidelines

In this chapter

6.1 Overview: Application guidelines

The purpose of the application guidelines is to give a glance of the possibilities of the heat pump system.

NOTICE

- The illustrations in the application guidelines are meant for reference only, and are NOT to be used as detailed hydraulic diagrams. The detailed hydraulic dimensioning and balancing are NOT shown, and are the responsibility of the installer.
- For more information about the configuration settings to optimize heat pump operation, see "10 Configuration" [▸ 126].

This chapter contains application guidelines for:

- Setting up the space heating/cooling system
- Setting up an auxiliary heat source for space heating
- Setting up the domestic hot water tank
- Setting up the energy metering
- Setting up the power consumption control
- Setting up an external temperature sensor

6.2 Setting up the space heating/cooling system

The heat pump system supplies leaving water to heat emitters in one or more rooms.

Because the system offers a wide flexibility to control the temperature in each room, you need to answer the following questions first:

- How many rooms are heated or cooled by the heat pump system?
- Which heat emitter types are used in each room and what is their design leaving water temperature?

Once the space heating/cooling requirements are clear, we recommend to follow the setup guidelines below.

NOTICE

If an external room thermostat is used, the external room thermostat will control the room frost protection. However, the room frost protection is only possible if [C.2] `Space heating/cooling`=`On`.

INFORMATION

In case an external room thermostat is used and room frost protection needs to be guaranteed in all conditions, then you have to set `Emergency` [9.5.1] to one of the following:

- `Automatic`
- `auto SH reduced/DHW on`
- `auto SH reduced/DHW off`
- `auto SH normal/DHW off`

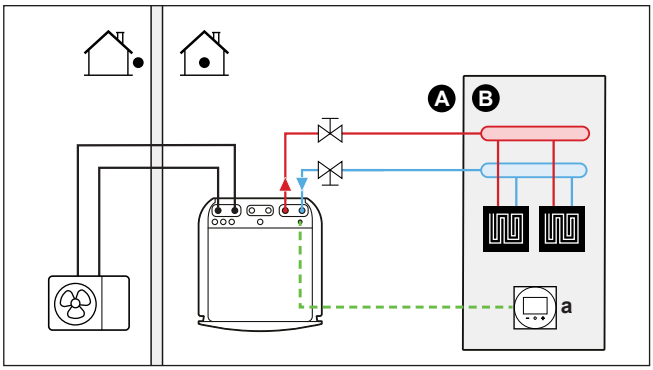
NOTICE

An overpressure bypass valve can be integrated in the system. Keep in mind that this valve might not be shown on the illustrations.

6.2.1 Single room

Underfloor heating or radiators – Wired room thermostat

Setup



A Main leaving water temperature zone
B One single room
a Dedicated Human Comfort Interface (BRC1HHDA used as room thermostat)

- The underfloor heating or radiators are directly connected to the indoor unit.
- The room temperature is controlled by the dedicated Human Comfort Interface (BRC1HHDA used as room thermostat).

Configuration

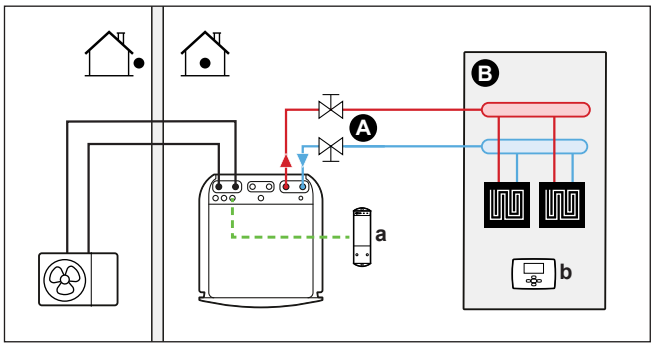
Setting	Value
Unit temperature control: ▪ #: [2.9] ▪ Code: [C-07]	2 (`Room thermostat`): Unit operation is decided based on the ambient temperature of the user interface.
Number of water temperature zones: ▪ #: [4.4] ▪ Code: [7-02]	0 (`Single zone`): Main

Benefits

- **Highest comfort and efficiency**. The smart room thermostat functionality can decrease or increase the desired leaving water temperature based on the actual room temperature (modulation). This results in:
  - Stable room temperature matching the desired temperature (higher comfort)
  - Less ON/OFF cycles (more quiet, higher comfort and higher efficiency)
  - Lowest possible leaving water temperature (higher efficiency)
- **Easy**. You can easily set the desired room temperature via the user interface:
  - For your daily needs, you can use preset values and schedules.
  - To deviate from your daily needs, you can temporarily overrule the preset values and schedules, or use the holiday mode.

Underfloor heating or radiators – Wireless room thermostat

Setup



A Main leaving water temperature zone
B One single room
a Receiver for wireless external room thermostat
b Wireless external room thermostat

- The underfloor heating or radiators are directly connected to the indoor unit.
- The room temperature is controlled by the wireless external room thermostat (optional equipment EKRTR1).

Configuration

Setting	Value
Unit temperature control: ▪ #: [2.9] ▪ Code: [C-07]	1 (`External room thermostat`): Unit operation is decided by the external thermostat.

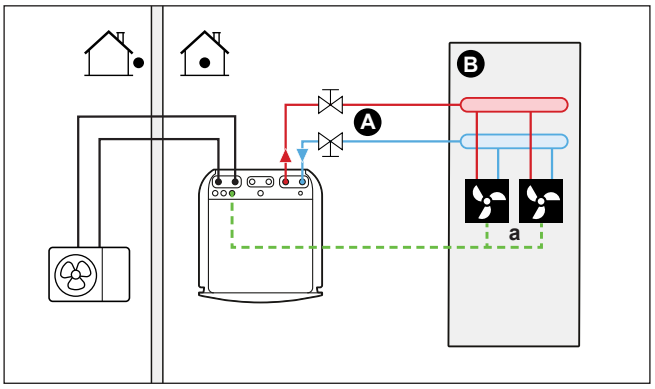
Setting	Value
Number of water temperature zones: ▪ #: [4.4] ▪ Code: [7-02]	0 (`Single zone`): Main
External room thermostat for the **main** zone: ▪ #: [2.A] ▪ Code: [C-05]	1 (`1 contact`): When the used external room thermostat or heat pump convector can only send a thermo ON/OFF condition. No separation between heating or cooling demand.

Benefits

- **Wireless.** The Daikin external room thermostat is available in a wireless version.
- **Efficiency.** Although the external room thermostat only sends ON/OFF signals, it is specifically designed for the heat pump system.
- **Comfort.** In case of underfloor heating, the wireless external room thermostat prevents condensation on the floor during cooling operation by measuring the room humidity.

Heat pump convectors

Setup



A Main leaving water temperature zone
B One single room
a Heat pump convectors (+ controllers)

- The heat pump convectors are directly connected to the indoor unit.
- The desired room temperature is set via the remote controller of the heat pump convectors.
- The space heating/cooling demand signal is sent to one digital input on the indoor unit (X2M/35 and X2M/30).
- The space operation mode is sent to the heat pump convectors by one digital output on the indoor unit (X2M/4 and X2M/3).

INFORMATION

When using multiple heat pump convectors, make sure each one receives the infrared signal from the remote controller of the heat pump convectors.

Configuration

Setting	Value
Unit temperature control: ▪ #: [2.9] ▪ Code: [C-07]	1 (`External room thermostat`): Unit operation is decided by the external thermostat.
Number of water temperature zones: ▪ #: [4.4] ▪ Code: [7-02]	0 (`Single zone`): Main
External room thermostat for the **main** zone: ▪ #: [2.A] ▪ Code: [C-05]	1 (`1 contact`): When the used external room thermostat or heat pump convector can only send a thermo ON/OFF condition. No separation between heating or cooling demand.

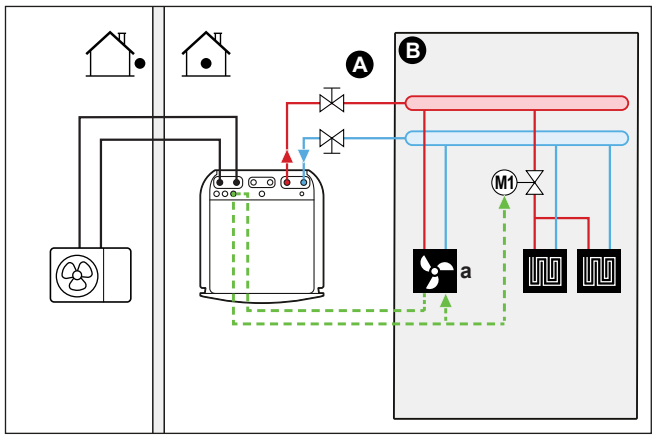
Benefits

- **Cooling.** The heat pump convector offers, besides heating capacity, also excellent cooling capacity.
- **Efficiency.** Optimal energy efficiency because of the interlink function.
- **Stylish.**

Combination: Underfloor heating + Heat pump convectors

- Space heating is provided by:
  - The underfloor heating
  - The heat pump convectors
- Space cooling is provided by the heat pump convectors only. The underfloor heating is shut off by the shut-off valve.

Setup



A Main leaving water temperature zone
B One single room
a Heat pump convectors (+ controllers)

- The heat pump convectors are directly connected to the indoor unit.
- A shut-off valve (field supply) is installed before the underfloor heating to prevent condensation on the floor during cooling operation.
- The desired room temperature is set via the remote controller of the heat pump convectors.

- The space heating/cooling demand signal is sent to one digital input on the indoor unit (X2M/35 and X2M/30).
- The space operation mode is sent by one digital output (X2M/4 and X2M/3) on the indoor unit to:
  - The heat pump convectors
  - The shut-off valve

Configuration

Setting	Value
Unit temperature control: ▪ #: [2.9] ▪ Code: [C-07]	1 (`External room thermostat`): Unit operation is decided by the external thermostat.
Number of water temperature zones: ▪ #: [4.4] ▪ Code: [7-02]	0 (`Single zone`): Main
External room thermostat for the **main** zone: ▪ #: [2.A] ▪ Code: [C-05]	1 (`1 contact`): When the used external room thermostat or heat pump convector can only send a thermo ON/OFF condition. No separation between heating or cooling demand.

Benefits

- **Cooling.** Heat pump convectors provide, besides heating capacity, also excellent cooling capacity.
- **Efficiency**. Underfloor heating has the best performance with the heat pump system.
- **Comfort.** The combination of the two heat emitter types provides:
  - The excellent heating comfort of the underfloor heating
  - The excellent cooling comfort of the heat pump convectors

6.2.2 Multiple rooms – One LWT zone

If only one leaving water temperature zone is needed because the design leaving water temperature of all heat emitters is the same, you do NOT need a mixing valve station (cost effective).

Example: If the heat pump system is used to heat up one floor where all the rooms have the same heat emitters.

Underfloor heating or radiators – Thermostatic valves

If you are heating up rooms with underfloor heating or radiators, a very common way is to control the temperature of the main room by using a thermostat (this can either be the user interface or an external room thermostat), while the other rooms are controlled by so-called thermostatic valves, which open or close depending on the room temperature.

Setup

- The underfloor heating of the main room is directly connected to the indoor unit.
- The room temperature of the main room is controlled by the dedicated Human Comfort Interface (BRC1HHDA used as room thermostat).

- A thermostatic valve is installed before the underfloor heating in each of the other rooms.

> **INFORMATION**
>
> Mind situations where the main room can be heated by another heating source. Example: Fireplaces.

Configuration

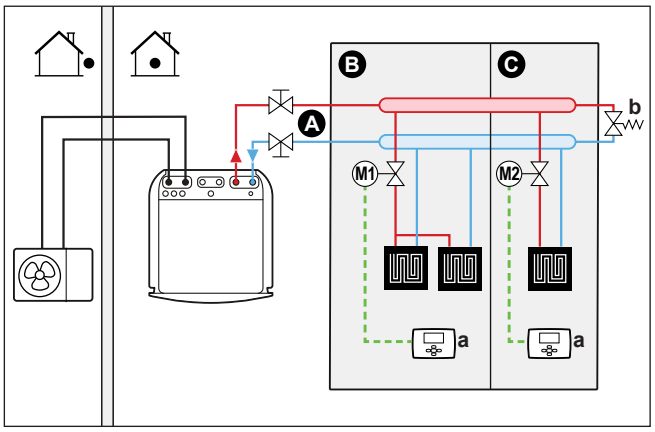
Setting	Value
Unit temperature control: ▪ #: [2.9] ▪ Code: [C-07]	2 (`Room thermostat`): Unit operation is decided based on the ambient temperature of the user interface.
Number of water temperature zones: ▪ #: [4.4] ▪ Code: [7-02]	0 (`Single zone`): Main

Benefits

- **Easy**. Same installation as for one room, but with thermostatic valves.

Underfloor heating or radiators – Multiple external room thermostats

Setup



A Main leaving water temperature zone
B Room 1
C Room 2
a External room thermostat

- For each room, a shut-off valve (field supplied) is installed to avoid leaving water supply when there is no heating or cooling demand.
- A bypass valve must be installed to make water recirculation possible when all shut-off valves are closed. To guarantee reliable operation, provide a minimum water flow as described in table "To check the water volume and flow rate" in "8.2 Preparing water piping" [▸ 75].
- The user interface integrated in the indoor unit decides the space operation mode. Mind that the operation mode on each room thermostat must be set to match the indoor unit.
- The room thermostats are connected to the shut-off valves, but do NOT have to be connected to the indoor unit. The indoor unit will supply leaving water all the time, with the possibility to program a leaving water schedule.

Configuration

Setting	Value
Unit temperature control: ▪ #: [2.9] ▪ Code: [C-07]	0 (`Leaving water`): Unit operation is decided based on the leaving water temperature.
Number of water temperature zones: ▪ #: [4.4] ▪ Code: [7-02]	0 (`Single zone`): Main

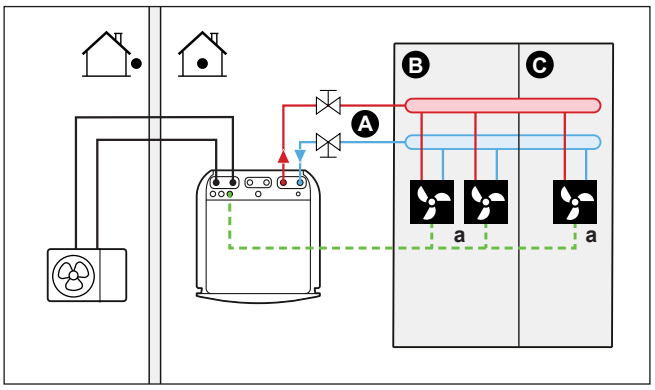
Benefits

Compared with underfloor heating or radiators for one room:

- **Comfort.** You can set the desired room temperature, including schedules, for each room via the room thermostats.

Heat pump convectors – Multiple rooms

Setup



A Main leaving water temperature zone
B Room 1
C Room 2
a Heat pump convectors (+ controllers)

- The desired room temperature is set via the remote controller of the heat pump convectors.
- The user interface integrated in the indoor unit decides the space operation mode.
- The heating or cooling demand signals of each heat pump convector are connected in parallel to the digital input on the indoor unit (X2M/35 and X2M/30). The indoor unit will only supply leaving water temperature when there is an actual demand.

INFORMATION

To increase comfort and performance, we recommend to install the valve kit option EKVKHPC on each heat pump convector.

Configuration

Setting	Value
Unit temperature control: ▪ #: [2.9] ▪ Code: [C-07]	1 (`External room thermostat`): Unit operation is decided by the external thermostat.

Setting	Value
Number of water temperature zones: ▪ #: [4.4] ▪ Code: [7-02]	0 (`Single zone`): Main

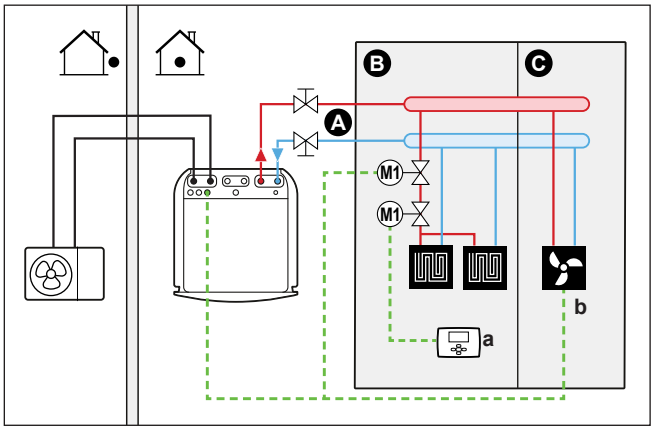
Benefits

Compared with heat pump convectors for one room:

- **Comfort.** You can set the desired room temperature, including schedules, for each room via the remote controller of the heat pump convectors.

Combination: Underfloor heating + Heat pump convectors – Multiple rooms

Setup



A Main leaving water temperature zone
B Room 1
C Room 2
a External room thermostat
b Heat pump convectors (+ controllers)

- For each room with heat pump convectors: The heat pump convectors are directly connected to the indoor unit.
- For each room with underfloor heating: Two shut-off valves (field supply) are installed before the underfloor heating:
  - A shut-off valve to prevent hot water supply when the room has no heating demand
  - A shut-off valve to prevent condensation on the floor during cooling operation of the rooms with heat pump convectors.
- For each room with heat pump convectors: The desired room temperature is set via the remote controller of the heat pump convectors.
- For each room with underfloor heating: The desired room temperature is set via the external room thermostat (wired or wireless).
- The user interface integrated in the indoor unit decides the space operation mode. Mind that the operation mode on each external room thermostat and remote controller of the heat pump convectors must be set to match the indoor unit.

INFORMATION

To increase comfort and performance, we recommend to install the valve kit option EKVKHPC on each heat pump convector.

Configuration

Setting	Value
Unit temperature control: ▪ #: [2.9] ▪ Code: [C-07]	0 (`Leaving water`): Unit operation is decided based on the leaving water temperature.
Number of water temperature zones: ▪ #: [4.4] ▪ Code: [7-02]	0 (`Single zone`): Main

6.2.3 Multiple rooms – Two LWT zones

If the heat emitters selected for each room are designed for different leaving water temperatures, you can use different leaving water temperature zones (maximum 2).

In this document:

- Main zone = Zone with the lowest design temperature in heating, and the highest design temperature in cooling
- Additional zone = Zone with the highest design temperature in heating, and the lowest design temperature in cooling

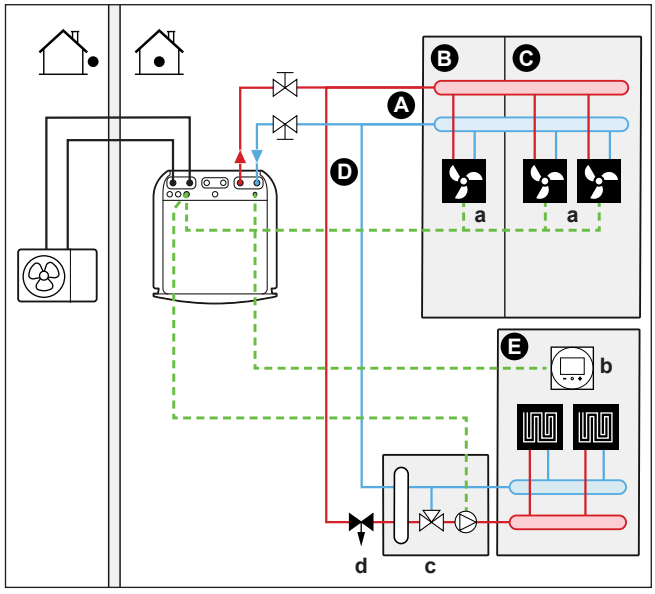
CAUTION

If there is more than one leaving water zone, ALWAYS install a mixing valve station in the main zone to decrease (in heating)/increase (in cooling) the leaving water temperature when the additional zone has demand.

Typical example:

Room (zone)	Heat emitters: Design temperature
Living room (main zone)	Underfloor heating: ▪ In heating: 35°C ▪ In cooling: 20°C (only refreshment, no real cooling allowed)
Bed rooms (additional zone)	Heat pump convectors: ▪ In heating: 45°C ▪ In cooling: 12°C

Setup



A Additional leaving water temperature zone
B Room 1
C Room 2
D Main leaving water temperature zone
E Room 3
a Remote controller of the heat pump convectors
b Dedicated Human Comfort Interface (BRC1HHDA used as room thermostat)
c Mixing valve station
d Pressure regulating valve

INFORMATION

A pressure regulating valve should be implemented before the mixing valve station. This is to guarantee the correct water flow balance between the main leaving water temperature zone and the additional leaving water temperature zone in relation to the required capacity of both water temperature zones.

- For the main zone:
  - A mixing valve station is installed before the underfloor heating.
  - The pump of the mixing valve station is controlled by the ON/OFF signal on the indoor unit (X2M/29 and X2M/21; normally closed shut-off valve output).
  - The room temperature is controlled by the dedicated Human Comfort Interface (BRC1HHDA used as room thermostat).
- For the additional zone:
  - The heat pump convectors are directly connected to the indoor unit.
  - The desired room temperature is set via the remote controller of the heat pump convectors for each room.
  - The heating or cooling demand signals of each heat pump convector are connected in parallel to the digital input on the indoor unit (X2M/35 and X2M/30). The indoor unit will only supply the desired additional leaving water temperature when there is an actual demand.
- The user interface integrated in the indoor unit decides the space operation mode. Mind that the operation mode on each remote controller of the heat pump convectors must be set to match the indoor unit.

Configuration

Setting	Value
Unit temperature control: ▪ #: [2.9] ▪ Code: [C-07]	2 (`Room thermostat`): Unit operation is decided based on the ambient temperature of the user interface. **Note:** ▪ Main room = user interface used as room thermostat functionality ▪ Other rooms = external room thermostat functionality
Number of water temperature zones: ▪ #: [4.4] ▪ Code: [7-02]	1 (`Dual zone`): Main + additional
In case of heat pump convectors: External room thermostat for the **additional** zone: ▪ #: [3.A] ▪ Code: [C-06]	1 (`1 contact`): When the used external room thermostat or heat pump convector can only send a thermo ON/OFF condition. No separation between heating or cooling demand.
Shut-off valve output	Set to follow the thermo demand of the main zone.
Shut-off valve	If the main zone must be shut off during cooling mode to prevent condensation on the floor, set it accordingly.
At the mixing valve station	Set the desired main leaving water temperature for heating and/or cooling.

Benefits

- **Comfort.**
  - The smart room thermostat functionality can decrease or increase the desired leaving water temperature based on the actual room temperature (modulation).
  - The combination of the two heat emitter systems provides the excellent heating comfort of the underfloor heating, and the excellent cooling comfort of the heat pump convectors.
- **Efficiency.**
  - Depending on the demand, the indoor unit supplies different leaving water temperature matching the design temperature of the different heat emitters.
  - Underfloor heating has the best performance with the heat pump system.

6.3 Setting up an auxiliary heat source for space heating

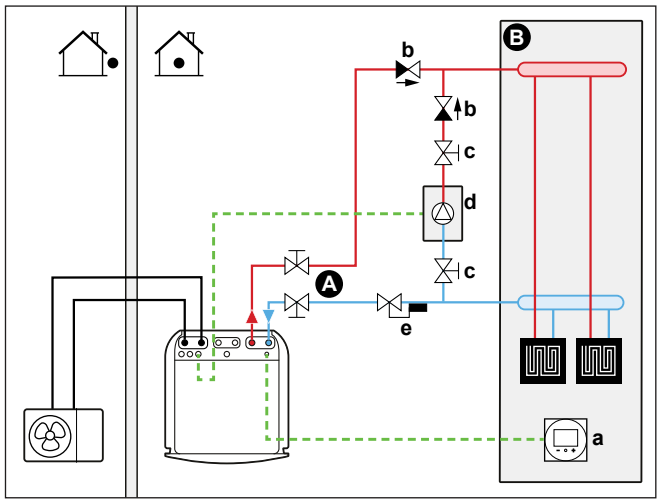
- Space heating can be done by:
  - The indoor unit
  - An auxiliary boiler (field supply) connected to the system

- When the room thermostat requests heating, the indoor unit or the auxiliary boiler starts operating depending on the outdoor temperature (status of the changeover to external heat source). When the permission is given to the auxiliary boiler, the space heating by the indoor unit is turned OFF.
- Bivalent operation is only possible for space heating, NOT for domestic hot water production. Domestic hot water is always produced by the DHW tank connected to the indoor unit.

INFORMATION

- During heating operation of the heat pump, the heat pump operates to achieve the desired temperature set via the user interface. When weather-dependent operation is active, the water temperature is determined automatically depending on the outdoor temperature.
- During heating operation of the auxiliary boiler, the auxiliary boiler operates to achieve the desired water temperature set via the auxiliary boiler controller.

Setup



A Main leaving water temperature zone
B One single room
a Dedicated Human Comfort Interface (BRC1HHDA used as room thermostat)
b Non-return valve (field supply)
c Shut-off valve (field supply)
d Auxiliary boiler (field supply)
e Aquastat valve (field supply)

NOTICE

- Make sure the auxiliary boiler and its integration in the system complies with applicable legislation.
- Daikin is NOT responsible for incorrect or unsafe situations in the auxiliary boiler system.

- Make sure the return water to the heat pump does NOT exceed 55°C. To do so:
  - Set the desired water temperature via the auxiliary boiler controller to maximum 55°C.
  - Install an aquastat valve in the return water flow of the heat pump. Set the aquastat valve to close above 55°C and to open below 55°C.
- Install non-return valves.
- An expansion vessel is already pre-mounted in the indoor unit. But for bivalent operation, also make sure that there is an expansion vessel in the auxiliary boiler loop. Otherwise when bivalent operation is running and if the Aquastat valve would close, there would be no expansion vessel in the water circuit anymore.

- Install the digital I/O PCB (option EKRP1HBAA).
- Connect X1 and X2 (changeover to external heat source) on the digital I/O PCB to the auxiliary boiler. See "9.3.8 To connect the changeover to external heat source" [▸ 117].
- To setup the heat emitters, see "6.2 Setting up the space heating/cooling system" [▸ 29].

Configuration

Via the user interface (configuration wizard):

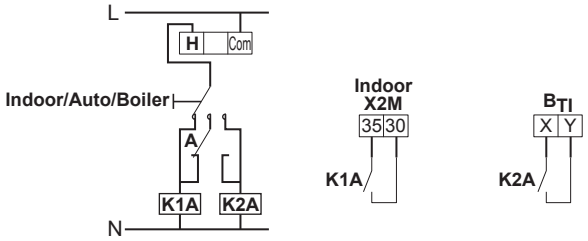
- Set the use of a bivalent system as external heat source.
- Set the bivalent temperature and hysteresis.

NOTICE

- Make sure the bivalent hysteresis has enough differential to prevent frequent changeover between indoor unit and auxiliary boiler.
- Because the outdoor temperature is measured by the outdoor unit air thermistor, install the outdoor unit in the shadow so that it is NOT influenced or turned ON/OFF by direct sunlight.
- Frequent changeover may cause corrosion of the auxiliary boiler. Contact the manufacturer of the auxiliary boiler for more information.

Changeover to external heat source decided by an auxiliary contact

- Only possible in external room thermostat control AND one leaving water temperature zone (see "6.2 Setting up the space heating/cooling system" [▸ 29]).
- The auxiliary contact can be:
  - An outdoor temperature thermostat
  - An electricity tariff contact
  - A manually operated contact
  - ...
- Setup: Connect the following field wiring:



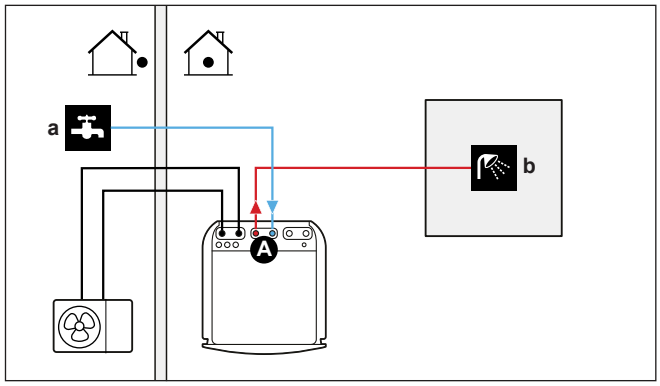
B_{TI}	Boiler thermostat input
A	Auxiliary contact (normally closed)
H	Heating demand room thermostat (optional)
K1A	Auxiliary relay for activation of indoor unit (field supply)
K2A	Auxiliary relay for activation of boiler (field supply)
Indoor	Indoor unit
Auto	Automatic
Boiler	Boiler

NOTICE

- Make sure the auxiliary contact has enough differential or time delay to prevent frequent changeover between indoor unit and auxiliary boiler.
- If the auxiliary contact is an outdoor temperature thermostat, install the thermostat in the shadow so that it is NOT influenced or turned ON/OFF by direct sunlight.
- Frequent changeover may cause corrosion of the auxiliary boiler. Contact the manufacturer of the auxiliary boiler for more information.

6.4 Setting up the domestic hot water tank

6.4.1 System layout – Integrated DHW tank



A Domestic hot water
a Cold water IN
b Hot water OUT

6.4.2 Selecting the volume and desired temperature for the DHW tank

People experience water as hot when its temperature is 40°C. Therefore, the DHW consumption is always expressed as equivalent hot water volume at 40°C. However, you can set the DHW tank temperature at a higher temperature (example: 53°C), which is then mixed with cold water (example: 15°C).

Selecting the volume and desired temperature for the DHW tank consists of:

1 Determining the DHW consumption (equivalent hot water volume at 40°C).
2 Determining the volume and desired temperature for the DHW tank.

Determining the DHW consumption

Answer the following questions and calculate the DHW consumption (equivalent hot water volume at 40°C) using typical water volumes:

Question	Typical water volume
How many showers are needed per day?	1 shower = 10 min×10 l/min = 100 l
How many baths are needed per day?	1 bath = 150 l
How much water is needed at the kitchen sink per day?	1 sink = 2 min×5 l/min = 10 l
Are there any other domestic hot water needs?	—

Example: If the DHW consumption of a family (4 persons) per day is as follows:

- 3 showers
- 1 bath
- 3 sink volumes

Then the DHW consumption = (3×100 l)+(1×150 l)+(3×10 l)=480 l

Determining the volume and desired temperature for the DHW tank

Formula	Example
$V_1=V_2+V_2\times(T_2-40)/(40-T_1)$	If: ▪ V_2=180 l ▪ T_2=54°C ▪ T_1=15°C Then V_1=280 l
$V_2=V_1\times(40-T_1)/(T_2-T_1)$	If: ▪ V_1=480 l ▪ T_2=54°C ▪ T_1=15°C Then V_2=307 l

V_1 DHW consumption (equivalent hot water volume at 40°C)

V_2 Required DHW tank volume if only heated once

T_2 DHW tank temperature

T_1 Cold water temperature

Possible DHW tank volumes

Type	Possible volumes
Integrated DHW tank	▪ 180 l ▪ 230 l

Energy saving tips

- If the DHW consumption differs from day to day, you can program a weekly schedule with different desired DHW tank temperatures for each day.
- The lower the desired DHW tank temperature, the more cost effective. By selecting a larger DHW tank, you can lower the desired DHW tank temperature.
- The heat pump itself can produce domestic hot water of maximum 55°C (50°C if outdoor temperature is low). The electrical resistance integrated in the heat pump can increase this temperature. However, this consumes more energy. We recommend to set the desired DHW tank temperature below 55°C to avoid using the electrical resistance.
- The higher the outdoor temperature, the better the performance of the heat pump.
  - If energy prices are the same during the day and the night, we recommend to heat up the DHW tank during the day.
  - If energy prices are lower during the night, we recommend to heat up the DHW tank during the night.

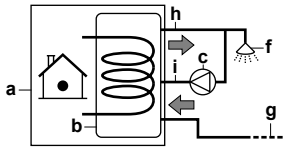
- When the heat pump produces domestic hot water, it cannot heat up a space. In case you need domestic hot water and space heating at the same, we recommend to produce the domestic hot water during the night when there is lower space heating demand.

6.4.3 Setup and configuration – DHW tank

- For large DHW consumptions, you can heat up the DHW tank several times during the day.
- To heat up the DHW tank to the desired DHW tank temperature, you can use the following energy sources:
  - Thermodynamic cycle of the heat pump
  - Electrical backup heater
- For more information about optimizing the energy consumption for producing domestic hot water, see "10 Configuration" [▸ 126].

6.4.4 DHW pump for instant hot water

Setup



a Indoor unit
b DHW tank
c DHW pump (field supply)
f Shower (field supply)
g Cold water
h Domestic hot water OUT
i Recirculation connection

- By connecting a DHW pump, instant hot water can be available at the tap.
- The DHW pump and the installation are field supply and the responsibility of the installer. For the electrical wiring, see "9.3.5 To connect the domestic hot water pump" [▸ 114].

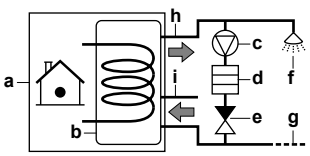
For more information about connecting the recirculation connection, see "8.6.4 To connect the recirculation piping" [▸ 95].

Configuration

- For more information, see "10 Configuration" [▸ 126].
- You can program a schedule to control the DHW pump via the user interface. For more information, see the user reference guide.

6.4.5 DHW pump for disinfection

Setup



a Indoor unit
b DHW tank
c DHW pump (field supply)
d Heater element (field supply)

e Non-return valve (field supply)
f Shower (field supply)
g Cold water
h Domestic hot water OUT
i Recirculation connection

- The DHW pump is field-supplied and its installation is the responsibility of the installer. For the electrical wiring, see "9.3.5 To connect the domestic hot water pump" [▸ 114].
- If the applicable legislation requires a higher temperature than the maximum tank setpoint during disinfection (see [2-03] in the field settings table), you can connect a DHW pump and heater element as shown above.
- If applicable legislation requires disinfection of the water piping until the tapping point, you can connect a DHW pump and heater element (if needed) as shown above.

Configuration

The indoor unit can control DHW pump operation. For more information, see "10 Configuration" [▸ 126].

6.5 Setting up the energy metering

- Via the user interface, you can read out the following energy data:
  - Produced heat
  - Consumed energy
- You can read out the energy data:
  - For space heating
  - For space cooling
  - For domestic hot water production
- You can read out the energy data:
  - Per month
  - Per year

INFORMATION

The calculated produced heat and consumed energy are an estimation, the accuracy cannot be guaranteed.

6.5.1 Produced heat

INFORMATION

The sensors used to calculate the produced heat are calibrated automatically.

- The produced heat is calculated internally based on:
  - The leaving and entering water temperature
  - The flow rate
- Setup and configuration: No additional equipment needed.

6.5.2 Consumed energy

You can use the following methods to determine the consumed energy:

- Calculating
- Measuring

> **INFORMATION**
>
> You cannot combine calculating the consumed energy (example: for backup heater) and measuring the consumed energy (example: for outdoor unit). If you do so, the energy data will be invalid.

Calculating the consumed energy

- The consumed energy is calculated internally based on:
  - The actual power input of the outdoor unit
  - The set capacity of the backup heater
  - The voltage
- Setup and configuration: To get accurate energy data, measure the capacity (resistance measurement) and set the capacity via the user interface for the backup heater (step 1).

Measuring the consumed energy

- Preferred method because of higher accuracy.
- Requires external power meters.
- Setup and configuration: When using electrical power meters, set the number of pulses/kWh for each power meter via the user interface.

> **INFORMATION**
>
> When measuring the electrical power consumption, make sure ALL power input of the system is covered by the electrical power meters.

6.5.3 Normal kWh rate power supply

General rule

One power meter that covers the entire system is sufficient.

Setup

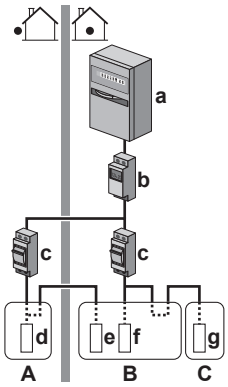
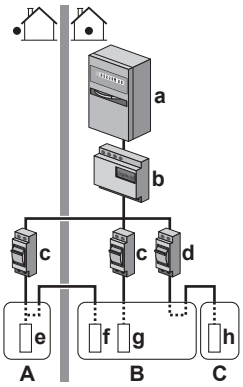
Connect the power meter to X5M/5 and X5M/6. See "9.3.4 To connect the electricity meters" [▸ 113].

Power meter type

In case of…	Use a… power meter
▪ Single-phase outdoor unit ▪ Backup heater supplied from a single-phase grid (i.e. the backup heater model is *3V or *6V connected to a single-phase grid)	Single-phase (*3V, *6V (6V): 1N~ 230 V)

In case of...	Use a... power meter
▪ Three-phase outdoor unit ▪ Backup heater supplied from a three-phase grid (i.e. the backup heater model is *9W or *6V connected to a three-phase grid)	Three-phase (*6V (6T1): 3~ 230 V) (*9W: 3N~ 400 V)

Example

Single-phase power meter	Three-phase power meter
	
A Outdoor unit **B** Indoor unit **C** DHW tank **a** Electrical cabinet (L_1/N) **b** Power meter (L_1/N) **c** Fuse (L_1/N) **d** Outdoor unit (L_1/N) **e** Indoor unit (L_1/N) **f** Backup heater (L_1/N) **g** Booster heater (L_1/N)	**A** Outdoor unit **B** Indoor unit **C** DHW tank **a** Electrical cabinet (L_1/L_2/L_3/N) **b** Power meter (L_1/L_2/L_3/N) **c** Fuse (L_1/L_2/L_3/N) **d** Fuse (L_1/N) **e** Outdoor unit (L_1/L_2/L_3/N) **f** Indoor unit (L_1/L_2/L_3/N) **g** Backup heater (L_1/L_2/L_3/N) **h** Booster heater (L_1/N)

Exception

- You can use a second power meter if:
  - The power range of one meter is insufficient.
  - The electrical meter cannot easily be installed in the electrical cabinet.
  - 230 V and 400 V three-phase grids are combined (very uncommon), because of technical limitations of power meters.
- Connection and setup:
  - Connect the second power meter to X5M/3 and X5M/4. See "9.3.4 To connect the electricity meters" [▸ 113].
  - In the software the power consumption data of both meters is added so you do NOT have to set which meter covers which power consumption. You only need to set the number of pulses of each power meter.
- See "6.5.4 Preferential kWh rate power supply" [▸ 49] for an example with two power meters.

6.5.4 Preferential kWh rate power supply

General rule

- Power meter 1: Measures the outdoor unit.
- Power meter 2: Measures the rest (i.e. indoor unit and backup heater).

Setup

- Connect power meter 1 to X5M/5 and X5M/6.
- Connect power meter 2 to X5M/3 and X5M/4.

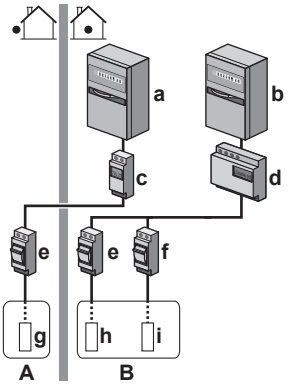
See "9.3.4 To connect the electricity meters" [▶ 113].

Power meter types

- Power meter 1: Single- or three-phase power meter according to the power supply of the outdoor unit.
- Power meter 2:
  - In case of a single-phase backup heater configuration, use a single-phase power meter.
  - In other cases, use a three-phase power meter.

Example

Single-phase outdoor unit with a three-phase backup heater:



A Outdoor unit
B Indoor unit
C DHW tank
a Electrical cabinet (L_1/N): Preferential kWh rate power supply
b Electrical cabinet (L_1/L_2/L_3/N): Normal kWh rate power supply
c Power meter (L_1/N)
d Power meter (L_1/L_2/L_3/N)
e Fuse (L_1/N)
f Fuse (L_1/L_2/L_3/N)
g Outdoor unit (L_1/N)
h Indoor unit (L_1/N)
i Backup heater (L_1/L_2/L_3/N)

6.6 Setting up the power consumption control

- The power consumption control:
  - Allows you to limit the power consumption of the entire system (sum of outdoor unit, indoor unit and backup heater).
  - Configuration: Set the power limitation level and how it has to be achieved via the user interface.

- The power limitation level can be expressed as:
  - Maximum running current (in A)
  - Maximum power input (in kW)
- The power limitation level can be activated:
  - Permanently
  - By digital inputs

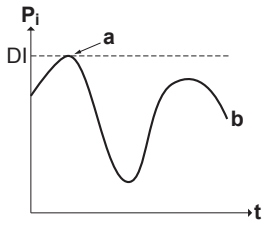
NOTICE

Set a minimum power consumption of ±3.6 kW to guarantee:

- Defrost operation. Otherwise, if defrosting is interrupted several times, the heat exchanger will freeze up.
- Space heating and DHW production by allowing the backup heater step 1.

6.6.1 Permanent power limitation

Permanent power limitation is useful to assure a maximum power or current input of the system. In some countries, legislation limits the maximum power consumption for space heating and DHW production.



P_i	Power input
t	Time
DI	Digital input (power limitation level)
a	Power limitation active
b	Actual power input

Setup and configuration

- No additional equipment needed.
- Set the power consumption control settings in [9.9] via the user interface (see " Power consumption control" [▸ 195]):
  - Select continuous limitation mode
  - Select the type of limitation (power in kW or current in A)
  - Set the desired power limitation level

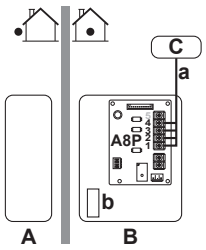
6.6.2 Power limitation activated by digital inputs

Power limitation is also useful in combination with an energy management system.

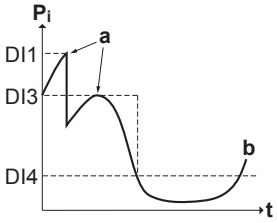
The power or current of the entire Daikin system is limited dynamically by digital inputs (maximum four steps). Each power limitation level is set via the user interface by limiting one of the following:

- Current (in A)
- Power input (in kW)

The energy management system (field supply) decides the activation of a certain power limitation level. **Example:** To limit the maximum power of the entire house (lighting, domestic appliances, space heating…).



A Outdoor unit
B Indoor unit
C Energy management system
a Power limitation activation (4 digital inputs
b Backup heater



P_i Power input
t Time
DI Digital inputs (power limitation levels)
a Power limitation active
b Actual power input

Setup

- Demand PCB (option EKRP1AHTA) needed.
- Maximum four digital inputs are used to activate the corresponding power limitation level:
  - DI1 = strongest limitation (lowest energy consumption)
  - DI4 = weakest limitation (highest energy consumption)
- Specification of the digital inputs:
  - DI1: S9S (limit 1)
  - DI2: S8S (limit 2)
  - DI3: S7S (limit 3)
  - DI4: S6S (limit 4)
- Refer to the wiring diagram for more information.

Configuration

- Set the power consumption control settings in [9.9] via the user interface (for the description of all settings, see " Power consumption control" [▸ 195]):
  - Select limitation by digital inputs.
  - Select the type of limitation (power in kW or current in A).
  - Set the desired power limitation level corresponding to each digital input.

INFORMATION

In case more than 1 digital input is closed (at the same time), the digital input priority is fixed: DI4 priority>...>DI1.

6.6.3 Power limitation process

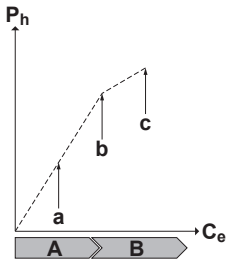
The outdoor unit has better efficiency than the electrical heater. Therefore, the electrical heater is limited and turned OFF first. The system limits power consumption in the following order:

1 Turns OFF the backup heater.
2 Limits the outdoor unit.
3 Turns OFF the outdoor unit.

Example

If the configuration is as follows: Power limitation level does NOT allow operation of backup heater (step 1).

Then power consumption is limited as follows:



P_h	Produced heat
C_e	Consumed energy
A	Outdoor unit
B	Backup heater
a	Limited outdoor unit operation
b	Full outdoor unit operation
c	Backup heater step 1 turned ON

6.7 Setting up an external temperature sensor

You can connect one external temperature sensor. It measures the indoor or outdoor ambient temperature. We recommend to use an external temperature sensor in the following cases:

Indoor ambient temperature

- In room thermostat control, the dedicated Human Comfort Interface (BRC1HHDA used as room thermostat) measures the indoor ambient temperature. Therefore, the Human Comfort Interface must be installed on a location:
  - Where the average temperature in the room can be detected
  - That is NOT exposed to direct sunlight
  - That is NOT near a heat source
  - That is NOT affected by outside air or air draught because of, for example, door opening/closing
- If this is NOT possible, we recommend to connect a remote indoor sensor (option KRCS01-1).
- Setup: For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the remote indoor sensor, and the addendum book for optional equipment.
- Configuration: Select room sensor [9.B].

Outdoor ambient temperature

- In the outdoor unit, the outdoor ambient temperature is measured. Therefore, the outdoor unit must be installed on a location:
  - At the north side of the house or at the side of the house where the most heat emitters are located
  - That is NOT exposed to direct sunlight
- If this is NOT possible, we recommend to connect a remote outdoor sensor (option EKRSCA1).
- Setup: For installation instructions, see the installation manual of the remote outdoor sensor, and the addendum book for optional equipment.
- Configuration: Select outdoor sensor [9.B].
- When the power saving functionality of the outdoor unit is active, the outdoor unit is turned down to reduce standby energy losses. As a result, the outdoor ambient temperature is NOT read out.
- If the desired leaving water temperature is weather dependent, the full time outdoor temperature measurement is important. This is another reason to install the optional outdoor ambient temperature sensor.

INFORMATION

The external outdoor ambient sensor data (either averaged or instantaneous) is used in the weather-dependent control curves and in the automatic heating/cooling changeover logic. To protect the outdoor unit, the internal sensor of the outdoor unit is always used.

7 Unit installation

In this chapter

7.1 Preparing the installation site

Do NOT install the unit in places often used as work place. In case of construction works (e.g. grinding works) where a lot of dust is created, the unit MUST be covered.

Choose an installation location with sufficient space for carrying the unit in and out of the site.

WARNING

The appliance shall be stored in a room without continuously operating ignition sources (example: open flames, an operating gas appliance or an operating electric heater).

WARNING

DO NOT reuse refrigerant piping that has been used with any other refrigerant. Replace the refrigerant pipes or clean thoroughly.

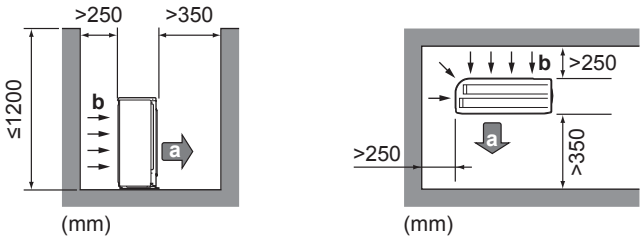
7.1.1 Installation site requirements of the outdoor unit

INFORMATION

Also read the following requirements:

- General installation site requirements. See the "General safety precautions" chapter.
- Refrigerant piping requirements (length, height difference). See further in this "Preparation" chapter.

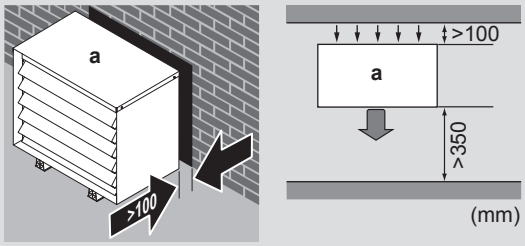
Mind the following spacing guidelines:



a Air outlet
b Air inlet

INFORMATION

In sound sensitive areas (e.g. near a bedroom), you can install the low sound cover (EKLN08A1) to decrease the operation noise of the outdoor unit. If you install it, mind the following spacing guidelines:



a Low sound cover

NOTICE

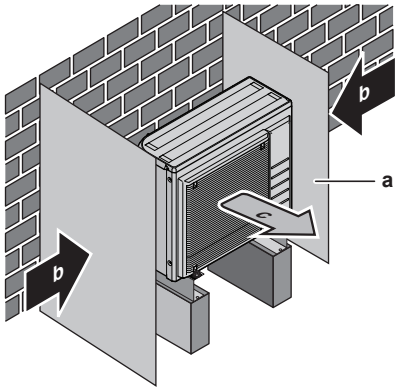
- Do NOT stack the units on each other.
- Do NOT hang the unit on a ceiling.

Strong winds (≥18 km/h) blowing against the outdoor unit's air outlet causes short circuit (suction of discharge air). This may result in:

- deterioration of the operational capacity;
- frequent frost acceleration in heating operation;
- disruption of operation due to decrease of low pressure or increase of high pressure;
- a broken fan (if a strong wind blows continuously on the fan, it may start rotating very fast, until it breaks).

It is recommended to install a baffle plate when the air outlet is exposed to wind.

It is recommended to install the outdoor unit with the air inlet facing the wall and NOT directly exposed to the wind.



a Baffle plate
b Prevailing wind direction
c Air outlet

Do NOT install the unit in the following places:

- Sound sensitive areas (e.g. near a bedroom), so that the operation noise will cause no trouble.
  Note: If the sound is measured under actual installation conditions, the measured value might be higher than the sound pressure level mentioned in Sound spectrum in the data book due to environmental noise and sound reflections.
- In places where a mineral oil mist, spray or vapour may be present in the atmosphere. Plastic parts may deteriorate and fall off or cause water leakage.

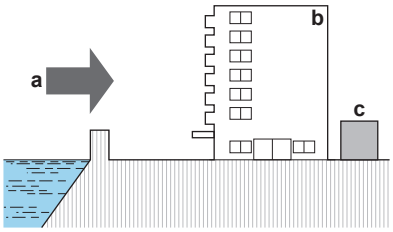
It is NOT recommended to install the unit in the following places because it may shorten the life of the unit:

- Where the voltage fluctuates a lot
- In vehicles or vessels
- Where acidic or alkaline vapour is present

Seaside installation. Make sure the outdoor unit is NOT directly exposed to sea winds. This is to prevent corrosion caused by high levels of salt in the air, which might shorten the life of the unit.

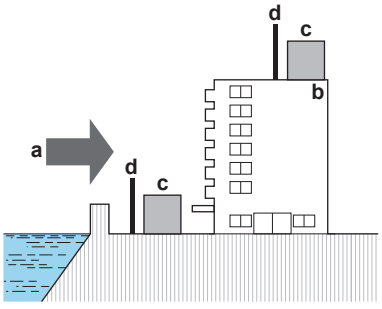
Install the outdoor unit away from direct sea winds.

Example: Behind the building.



If the outdoor unit is exposed to direct sea winds, install a windbreaker.

- Height of windbreaker≥1.5×height of outdoor unit
- Mind the service space requirements when installing the windbreaker.



a Sea wind
b Building
c Outdoor unit
d Windbreaker

The outdoor unit is designed for outdoor installation only, and for the following ambient temperatures:

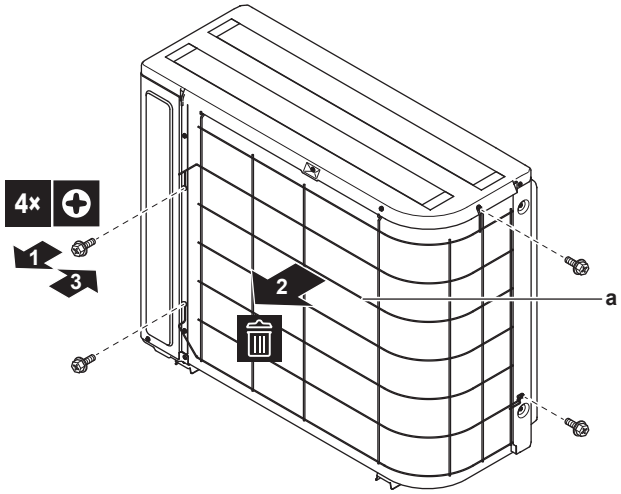
Cooling mode	10~43°C
Heating mode	–25~25°C

7.1.2 Additional installation site requirements of the outdoor unit in cold climates

In areas with low ambient temperatures and high humidity, or in areas with heavy snowfall, remove the suction grille to ensure proper operation.

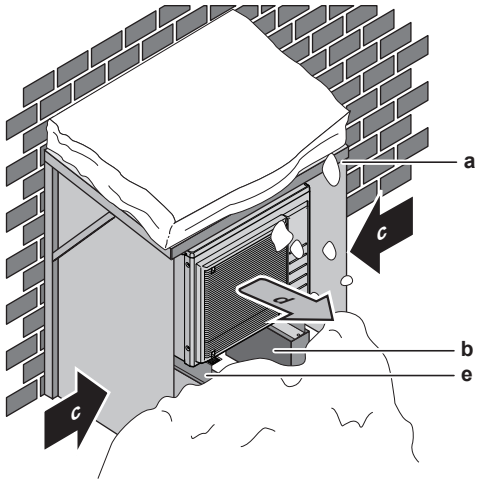
Non-exhaustive list of areas: Austria, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, Germany, Hungary, Latvia, Lithuania, Norway, Poland, Romania, Serbia, Slovakia, Sweden, …

1. Remove the screws holding the suction grille.
2. Remove the suction grille, and dispose of it.
3. Reattach the screws to the unit.



a Suction grille

Protect the outdoor unit against direct snowfall and take care that the outdoor unit is NEVER snowed up.



a Snow cover or shed
b Pedestal
c Prevailing wind direction
d Air outlet
e EKFT008D option kit

In any case, provide at least 300 mm of free space below the unit. Additionally, make sure the unit is positioned at least 100 mm above the maximum expected level of snow. See "7.3 Mounting the outdoor unit" [▸ 64] for more details.

In heavy snowfall areas it is very important to select an installation site where the snow will NOT affect the unit. If lateral snowfall is possible, make sure that the heat exchanger coil is NOT affected by the snow. If necessary, install a snow cover or shed and a pedestal.

7.1.3 Installation site requirements of the indoor unit

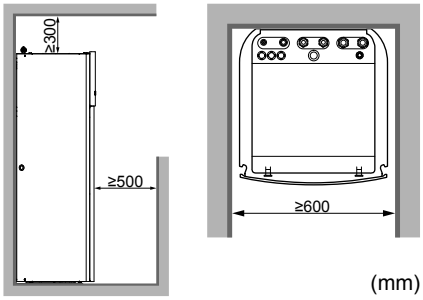
INFORMATION

Also read the precautions and requirements in the "1 General safety precautions" [▸ 6].

- The indoor unit is designed for indoor installation only and for the following ambient temperatures:
  - Space heating operation: 5~30°C
  - Space cooling operation: 5~35°C
  - Domestic hot water production: 5~35°C
- Mind the following measurements guidelines:

Maximum refrigerant piping length between indoor unit and outdoor unit	30 m
Minimum refrigerant piping length between indoor unit and outdoor unit	3 m
Maximum height difference between indoor unit and outdoor unit	20 m

- Mind the following spacing installation guidelines:



(mm)

INFORMATION

If you have limited installation space, do the following before installing the unit in its final position: "7.4.4 To connect the drain hose to the drain" [▸ 72]. It requires to remove one or both side panels.

- The foundation must be strong enough to bear the weight of the unit. Take the weight of the unit with a domestic hot water tank full of water into account.
  Make sure, in the event of a water leak, water cannot cause any damage to the installation space and surroundings.

Do NOT install the unit in places such as:

- In places where a mineral oil mist, spray or vapour may be present in the atmosphere. Plastic parts may deteriorate and fall off or cause water leakage.
- Sound sensitive areas (e.g. near a bedroom), so that the operation noise will cause no trouble.
- In places with high humidity (max. RH=85%), for example a bathroom.
- In places where frost is possible. Ambient temperature around the indoor unit must be >5°C.

Special requirements for R32

WARNING

- Do NOT pierce or burn.
- Do NOT use means to accelerate the defrosting process or to clean the equipment, other than those recommended by the manufacturer.
- Be aware that R32 refrigerant does NOT contain an odour.

WARNING

The appliance shall be stored so as to prevent mechanical damage and in a well-ventilated room without continuously operating ignition sources (example: open flames, an operating gas appliance or an operating electric heater) and have a room size as specified below.

NOTICE

- Do NOT re-use joints and copper gaskets which have been used already.
- Joints made in installation between parts of refrigerant system shall be accessible for maintenance purposes.

WARNING

Make sure installation, servicing, maintenance and repair comply with instructions from Daikin and with applicable legislation (for example national gas regulation) and are executed only by authorised persons.

NOTICE

- Pipework shall be protected from physical damage.
- Installation of pipework shall be kept to a minimum.

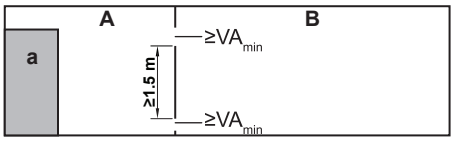
If the total refrigerant charge in the system is ≥1.84 kg (i.e. if the piping length is ≥27 m), you need to comply with the minimum floor area requirements as described in the following flow chart. The flow chart uses the following tables: "16.5 Table 1 – Maximum refrigerant charge allowed in a room: indoor unit" [▸ 249], "16.6 Table 2 – Minimum floor area: indoor unit" [▸ 250] and "16.7 Table 3 – Minimum venting opening area for natural ventilation: indoor unit" [▸ 250].

INFORMATION

Systems with a total refrigerant charge (m_c) <1.84 kg (i.e. if the piping length is <27 m) are NOT subjected to any requirements to the installation room.

INFORMATION

Multiple indoor units. If two or more indoor units are installed in a room, you must consider the maximum refrigerant charge that can be released in the room when a SINGLE leak occurs. **Example:** If two indoor units are installed in the room, each with its own outdoor unit, then you have to consider the refrigerant charge of the largest indoor-outdoor combination.



a Indoor unit
A Room where the indoor unit is installed.
B Room adjacent to room A.

Unit can be installed at **room A** if:
- 2 ventilation openings (permanently open) are provided between room A and B, 1 at the top and 1 at the bottom.
- **Bottom opening:** The bottom opening must meet the minimum area requirements (VA_{min}). It must be as close as possible to the floor. If the ventilation opening starts from the floor, the height must be ≥20 mm. The bottom of the opening must be situated ≤100 mm from the floor. At least 50% of the required opening area must be situated <200 mm from the floor. The entire area of the opening must be situated <300 mm from the floor.
- **Top opening:** The area of the top opening must be larger than or equal to the bottom opening. The bottom of the top opening must be situated at least 1.5 m above the top of the bottom opening.
- Ventilation openings to the outside are NOT considered suitable ventilation openings (the user can block them when it is cold).

7.2 Opening and closing the units

7.2.1 About opening the units

At certain times, you have to open the unit. **Example:**

- When connecting the refrigerant piping
- When connecting the electrical wiring
- When maintaining or servicing the unit

DANGER: RISK OF ELECTROCUTION

Do NOT leave the unit unattended when the service cover is removed.

7.2.2 To open the outdoor unit

DANGER: RISK OF ELECTROCUTION

DANGER: RISK OF BURNING/SCALDING

See "8.3.8 To connect the refrigerant piping to the outdoor unit" [▸ 86] and "9.2.1 To connect the electrical wiring to the outdoor unit" [▸ 102].

7.2.3 To close the outdoor unit

1 Close the switch box cover.

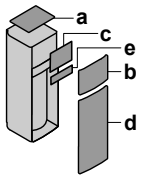
2 Close the service cover.

NOTICE

When closing the outdoor unit cover, make sure that the tightening torque does NOT exceed 4.1 N•m.

7.2.4 To open the indoor unit

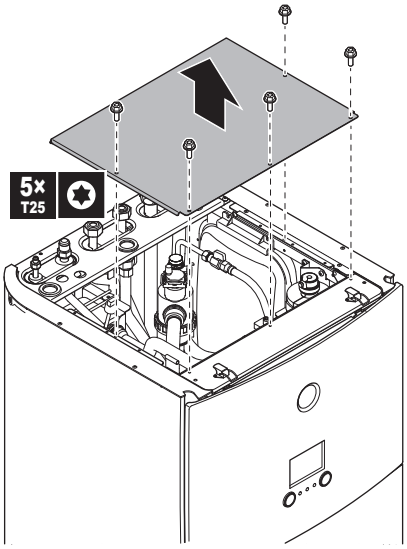
Overview



a Top panel
b User interface panel
c Switch box cover
d Front panel
e High voltage switch box cover

Open

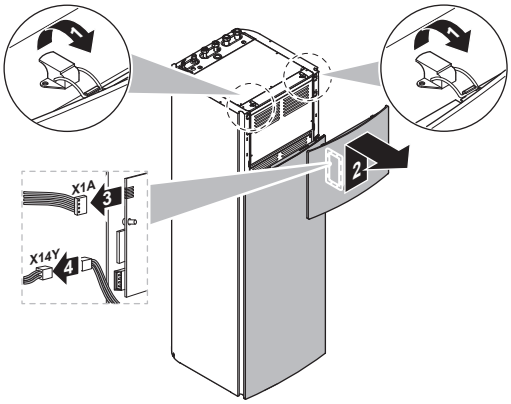
1 Remove the top panel.



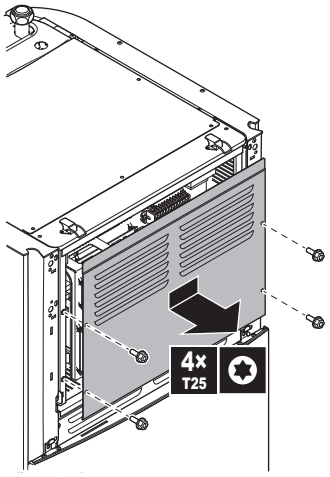
2 Remove the user interface panel. Open the hinges at the top and slide the top panel upwards.

NOTICE

If you remove the user interface panel, also disconnect the cables from the back of the user interface panel to prevent damage.

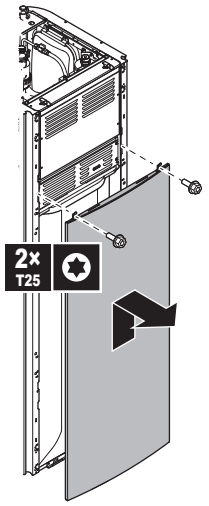


3 Remove the switch box cover.

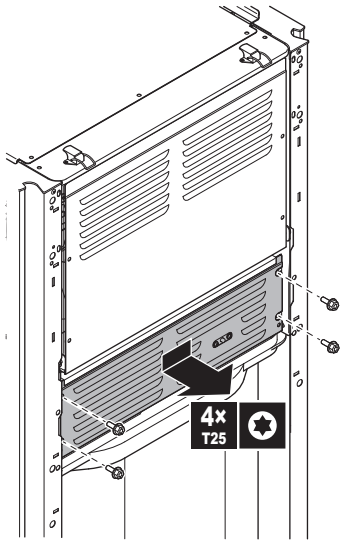


4 If necessary, remove the front plate. This is, for example, necessary in the following cases:

- "7.2.5 To lower the switch box on the indoor unit" [▸ 63]
- "7.4.4 To connect the drain hose to the drain" [▸ 72]
- When you need access to the high voltage switch box



5 If you need access to the high voltage components, remove the high voltage switch box cover.



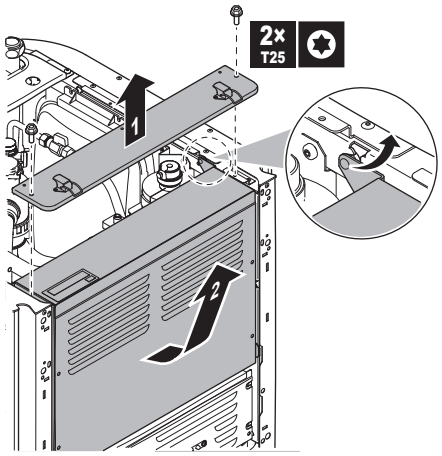
7.2.5 To lower the switch box on the indoor unit

During the installation, you will need access to the inside of the indoor unit. To have easier front access, put the switch box lower on the unit as follows:

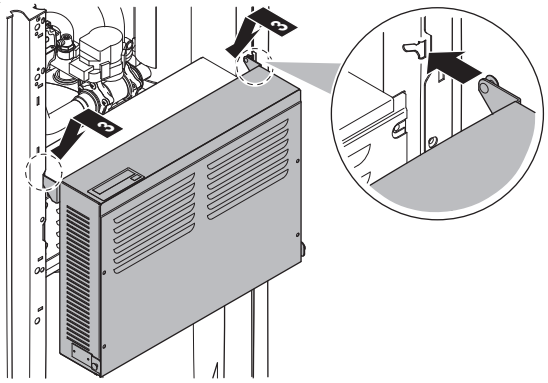
Prerequisite: The user interface panel and front panel have been removed.

1 Remove the fixing plate at the top of the unit.

2 Tilt the switch box to the front and lift it out of its hinges.



3 Place the switch box lower on the unit. Use the 2 hinges located lower on the unit.



7.2.6 To close the indoor unit

1 Close the cover of the switch box.

2 Put the switch box back into place.

3 Reinstall the top panel.

4 Reinstall the side panels.

5 Reinstall the front panel.

6 Reconnect the cables to the user interface panel.

7 Reinstall the user interface panel.

NOTICE

When closing the indoor unit cover, make sure that the tightening torque does NOT exceed 4.1 N•m.

7.3 Mounting the outdoor unit

7.3.1 About mounting the outdoor unit

When

You have to mount the outdoor and indoor unit before you can connect the refrigerant and water piping.

Typical workflow

Mounting the outdoor unit typically consists of the following stages:

1 Providing the installation structure.
2 Installing the outdoor unit.
3 Providing drainage.
4 Preventing the unit from falling over.
5 Protecting the unit against snow and wind by installing a snow cover and baffle plates. See "7.1 Preparing the installation site" [▸ 54].

7.3.2 Precautions when mounting the outdoor unit

INFORMATION

Also read the precautions and requirements in the following chapters:

- "1 General safety precautions" [▸ 6]
- "7.1 Preparing the installation site" [▸ 54]

7.3.3 To provide the installation structure

Check the strength and level of the installation ground so that the unit will not cause any operating vibration or noise.

Fix the unit securely by means of foundation bolts in accordance with the foundation drawing.

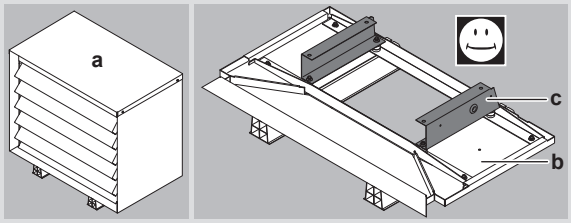
This topic shows different installation structures. For all, use 4 sets of M8 or M10 anchor bolts, nuts and washers. In any case, provide at least 300 mm of free space below the unit. Additionally, make sure the unit is positioned at least 100 mm above the maximum expected level of snow.

INFORMATION

The maximum height of the upper protruding part of the bolts is 15 mm.

INFORMATION

If you install the U-beams in combination with the low sound cover (EKLN08A1), different installation instructions apply for the U-beams. See the installation manual of the low sound cover.

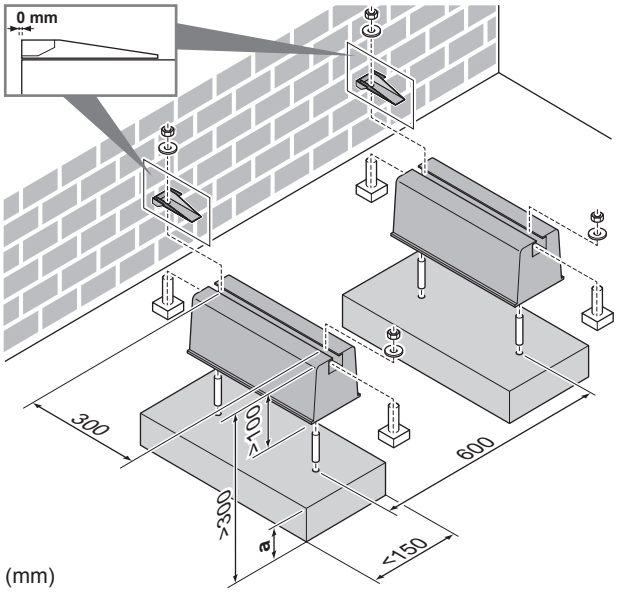


a Low sound cover

b Bottom parts of the low sound cover

c U-beams

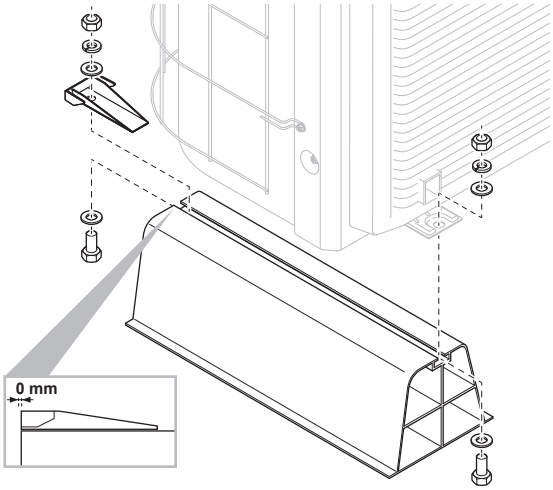
Option 1: On mounting feet "flexi-foot with strut"



a Maximum snowfall height

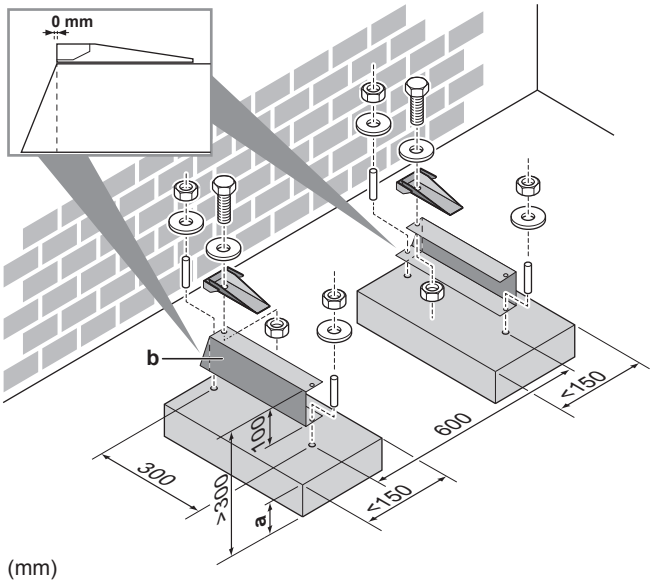
Option 2: On plastic mounting feet

In this case, you can use the bolts, nuts, washers and spring washers delivered with the unit as accessories.



Option 3: On a pedestal with the EKFT008D option kit

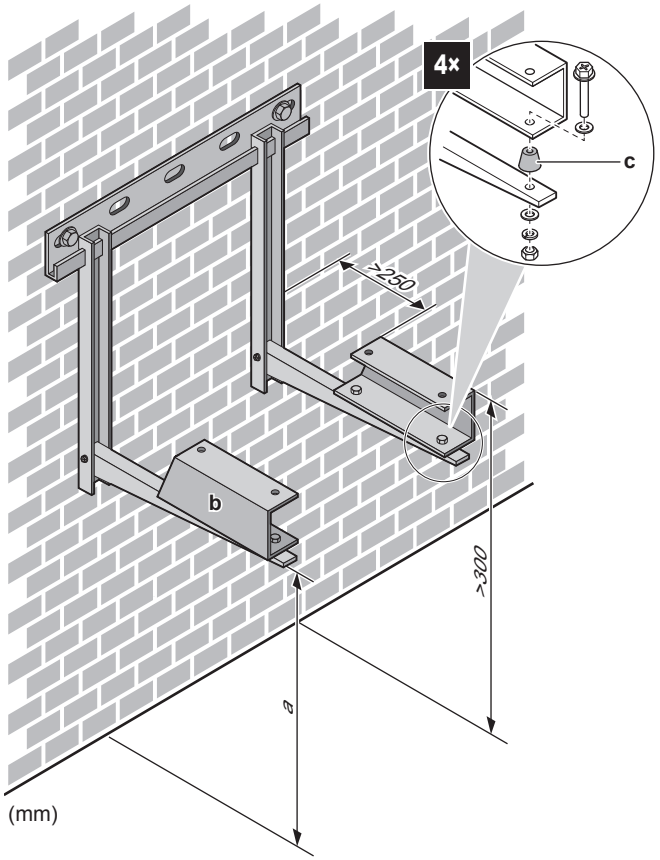
The EKFT008D option kit is recommended in areas with heavy snowfall.



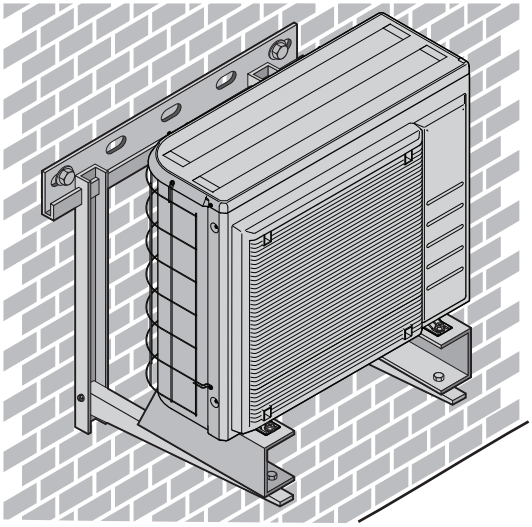
a Maximum snowfall height
b EKFT008D option kit

Option 4: On brackets to the wall with the EKFT008D option kit

The EKFT008D option kit is recommended in areas with heavy snowfall.



a Maximum snowfall height
b EKFT008D option kit
c Anti-vibration rubber (field supply)



7.3.4 To install the outdoor unit

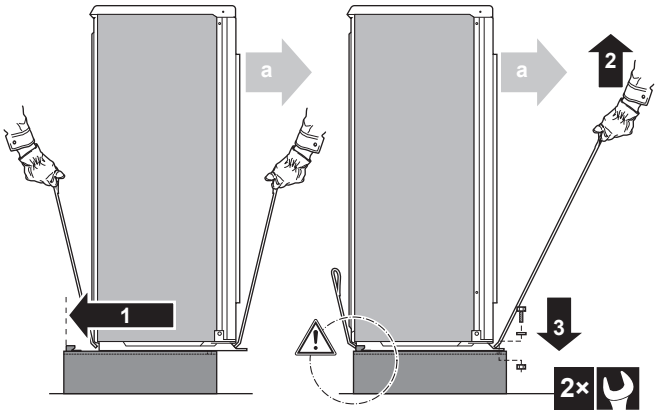
CAUTION

Do NOT remove the protective cardboard before the unit is installed properly.

1 Lift the outdoor unit as described in "4.2.2 To handle the outdoor unit" [▸ 21].

2 Install the outdoor unit as follows:

- (1) Put the unit into position (using the sling to the left and the handle to the right).
- (2) Remove the sling (by pulling 1 side of the sling).
- (3) Fix the unit.

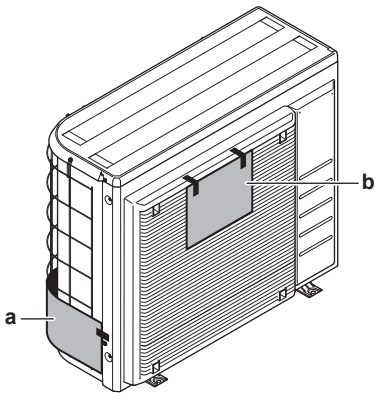


a Air outlet

NOTICE

Properly align the unit. Make sure the backside of the unit does NOT protrude.

3 Remove the protective cardboard and instruction sheet.



a Protective cardboard
b Instruction sheet

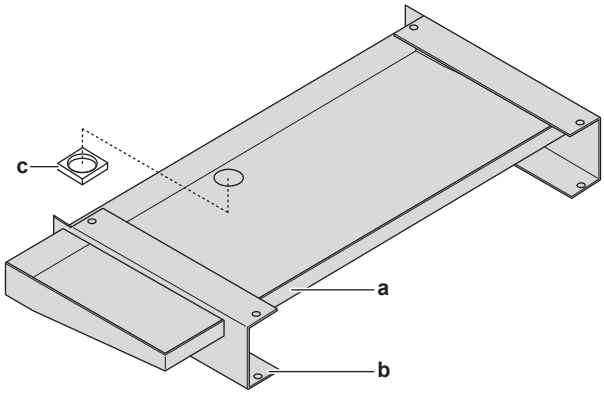
7.3.5 To provide drainage

- Make sure that condensation water can be evacuated properly.
- Install the unit on a base to make sure that there is proper drainage in order to avoid ice accumulation.
- Prepare a water drainage channel around the foundation to drain waste water away from the unit.
- Avoid drain water flowing over the footpath, so that it does NOT become slippery in case of ambient freezing temperatures.
- If you install the unit on a frame, install a waterproof plate within 150 mm of the bottom side of the unit in order to prevent water from getting into the unit and to avoid drain water dripping (see the following figure).

NOTICE

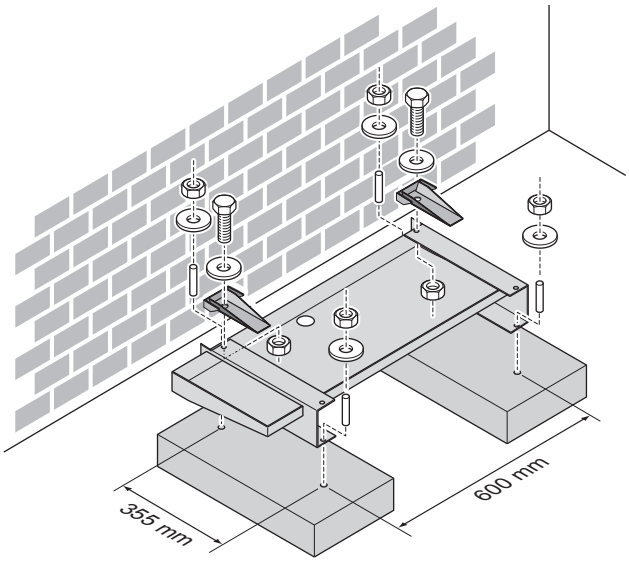
If the drain holes of the outdoor unit are blocked up, provide space of at least 300 mm below the outdoor unit.

- **Drain pan.** You can use the drain pan option (EKDP008D) to gather the drain water. For the complete installation instructions, see the installation manual of the drain pan. In short, the drain pan must be installed level (with a tolerance of 1° at all sides) and as follows:



a Drain pan
b U-beams

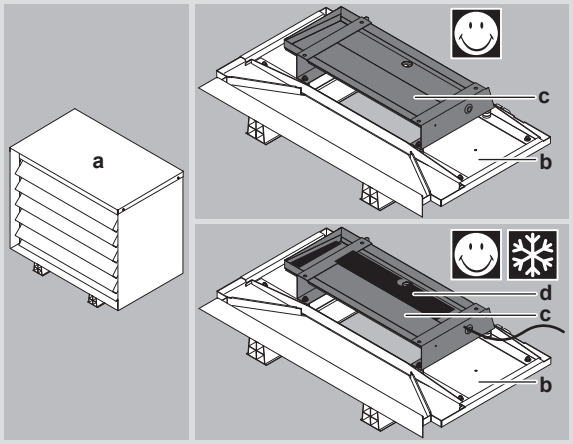
c Drain hole insulation



- **Drain pan heater.** You can use the drain pan heater option (EKDPH008CA) to prevent freezing-up of the drain pan. For the installation instructions, see the installation manual of the drain pan heater.
- **Non-heated drain tube.** When using the drain pan heater without drain tube or with a non-heated drain tube, remove the drain hole insulation (Item c on the illustration).

INFORMATION

If you install the drain pan kit (with or without drain pan heater) in combination with the low sound cover (EKLN08A1), different installation instructions apply for the drain pan kit. See the installation manual of the low sound cover.



a Low sound cover

b Bottom parts of the low sound cover

c Drain pan kit

d Drain pan heater

7.3.6 To prevent the outdoor unit from falling over

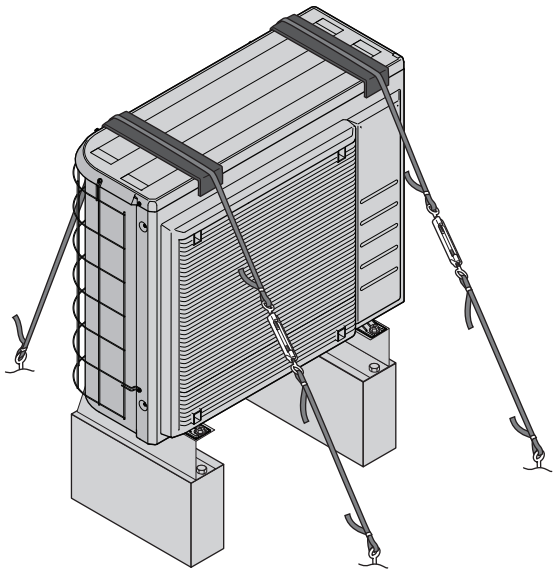
In case the unit is installed in places where strong wind can tilt the unit, take following measure:

1. Prepare 2 cables as indicated in the following illustration (field supply).
2. Place the 2 cables over the outdoor unit.

3 Insert a rubber sheet between the cables and the outdoor unit to prevent the cables from scratching the paint (field supply).

4 Attach the ends of the cables.

5 Tighten the cables.



7.4 Mounting the indoor unit

7.4.1 About mounting the indoor unit

When

You have to mount the outdoor and indoor unit before you can connect the refrigerant and water piping.

Typical workflow

Mounting the indoor unit typically consists of the following stages:

1 Installing the indoor unit.

7.4.2 Precautions when mounting the indoor unit

INFORMATION

Also read the precautions and requirements in the following chapters:

- "1 General safety precautions" [▸ 6]
- "7.1 Preparing the installation site" [▸ 54]

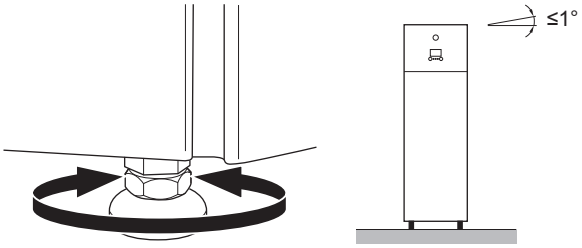
7.4.3 To install the indoor unit

1 Lift the indoor unit from the pallet and place it on the floor. Also see "4.3.3 To handle the indoor unit" [▸ 22].

2 Connect the drain hose to the drain. See "7.4.4 To connect the drain hose to the drain" [▸ 72].

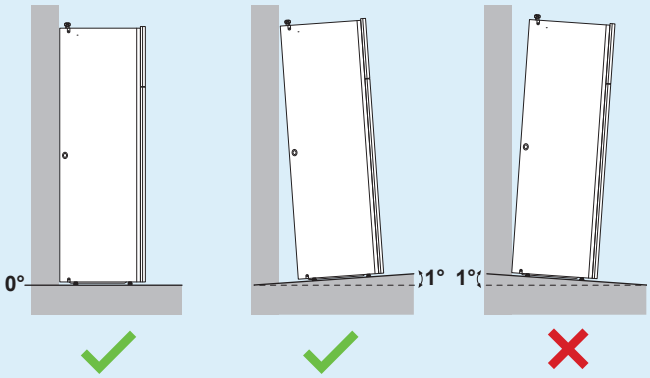
3 Slide the indoor unit into position.

4 Adjust the height of the leveling feet to compensate for floor irregularities. The maximum allowed deviation is 1°.



NOTICE

Do NOT tilt the unit forwards:



7.4.4 To connect the drain hose to the drain

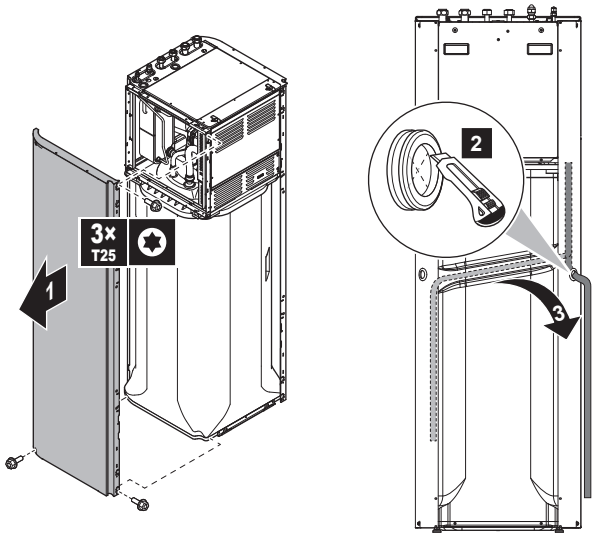
Water coming from the pressure relief valve is collected in the drain pan. The drain pan is connected to a drain hose inside the unit. You must connect the drain hose to an appropriate drain according to the applicable legislation. You can route the drain hose through the left or right side panel.

Prerequisite: The user interface panel and front panel have been removed.

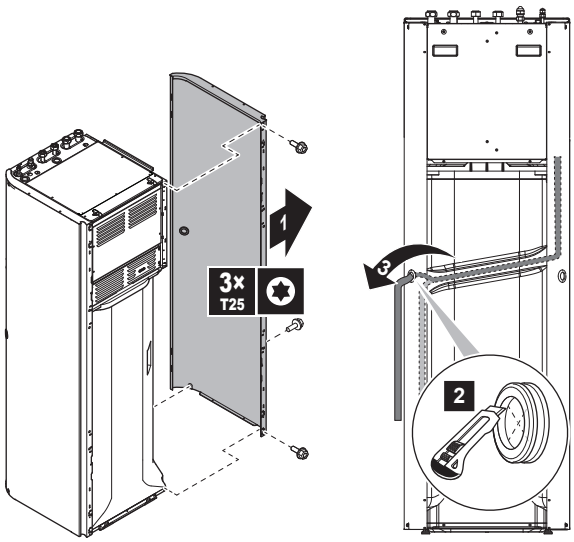
1. Remove one of the side panels.
2. Cut out the rubber grommet.
3. Pull the drain hose through the hole.
4. Reattach the side panel. Ensure the water can flow through the drain tube.

It is recommended to use a tundish to collect the water.

Option 1: Through the left side panel



Option 2: Through the right side panel



8 Piping installation

In this chapter

8.1 Preparing refrigerant piping

8.1.1 Refrigerant piping requirements

INFORMATION

Also read the precautions and requirements in the "1 General safety precautions" [▶ 6].

- **Piping material:** Phosphoric acid deoxidised seamless copper.
- **Piping diameter:**

Liquid piping	Ø6.4 mm (1/4")
Gas piping	Ø15.9 mm (5/8")

- **Piping temper grade and thickness:**

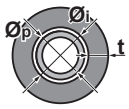
Outer diameter (Ø)	Temper grade	Thickness (t)[a]	
6.4 mm (1/4")	Annealed (O)	≥0.8 mm	
15.9 mm (5/8")	Annealed (O)	≥1.0 mm	

[a] Depending on the applicable legislation and the maximum working pressure of the unit (see "PS High" on the unit name plate), larger piping thickness might be required.

8.1.2 Refrigerant piping insulation

- Use polyethylene foam as insulation material:
  - with a heat transfer rate between 0.041 and 0.052 W/mK (0.035 and 0.045 kcal/mh°C)
  - with a heat resistance of at least 120°C
- Insulation thickness

Pipe outer diameter ($Ø_p$)	Insulation inner diameter ($Ø_i$)	Insulation thickness (t)
6.4 mm (1/4")	8~10 mm	10 mm
15.9 mm (5/8")	16~20 mm	13 mm



If the temperature is higher than 30°C and the humidity is higher than RH 80%, the thickness of the insulation materials should be at least 20 mm to prevent condensation on the surface of the insulation.

8.2 Preparing water piping

- **Valve towards expansion vessel.** The valve towards the expansion vessel (if equipped) MUST be open.

8.2.1 Water circuit requirements

INFORMATION

Also read the precautions and requirements in the "1 General safety precautions" [▶ 6].

NOTICE

In case of plastic pipes, make sure they are fully oxygen diffusion tight according to DIN 4726. The diffusion of oxygen into the piping can lead to excessive corrosion.

- **Connecting piping – Legislation.** Make all piping connections in accordance with the applicable legislation and the instructions in the "Installation" chapter, respecting the water inlet and outlet.
- **Connecting piping – Force.** Do NOT use excessive force when connecting the piping. Deformation of the piping can cause malfunctioning of the unit.
- **Connecting piping – Tools.** Only use appropriate tooling to handle brass, which is a soft material. If NOT, pipes will get damaged.

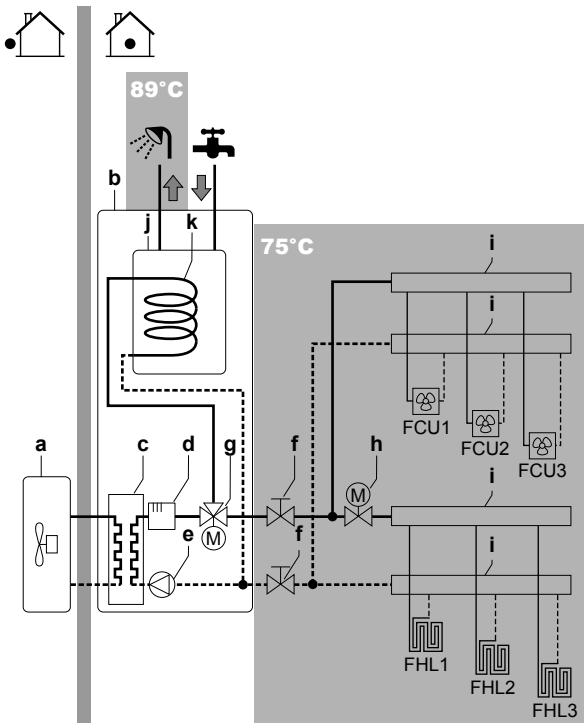
- **Connecting piping – Air, moisture, dust.** If air, moisture or dust gets into the circuit, problems may occur. To prevent this:
  - Only use clean pipes
  - Hold the pipe end downwards when removing burrs.
  - Cover the pipe end when inserting it through a wall, to prevent dust and/or particles from entering the pipe.
  - Use a decent thread sealant to seal connections.
- **Closed circuit.** Use the indoor unit ONLY in a closed water system. Using the system in an open water system will lead to excessive corrosion.
- **Glycol.** For safety reasons, it is NOT allowed to add any kind of glycol to the water circuit.
- **Piping length.** It is recommended to avoid long runs of piping between the domestic hot water tank and the hot water end point (shower, bath,…) and to avoid dead ends.
- **Piping diameter.** Select the water piping diameter in relation to the required water flow and the available external static pressure of the pump. See "16 Technical data" [▶ 239] for the external static pressure curves of the indoor unit.
- **Water flow.** You can find the minimum required water flow for indoor unit operation in the following table. In all cases, this flow needs to be guaranteed. When the flow is lower, the indoor unit will stop operation and display error 7H.

Minimum required flow rate
12 l/min

- **Field supply components – Water.** Only use materials that are compatible with water used in the system and with the materials used in the indoor unit.
- **Field supply components – Water pressure and temperature.** Check that all components in the field piping can withstand the water pressure and water temperature.
- **Water pressure.** The maximum water pressure is 4 bar. Provide adequate safeguards in the water circuit to ensure that the maximum pressure is NOT exceeded.
- **Water temperature.** All installed piping and piping accessories (valve, connections,…) MUST withstand the following temperatures:

INFORMATION

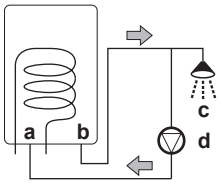
The following illustration is an example and might NOT match your system layout.



a	Outdoor unit	**h**	Motorised 2-way valve (field supply)
b	Indoor unit	**i**	Collector
c	Heat exchanger	**j**	Domestic hot water tank
d	Backup heater	**k**	Heat exchanger coil
e	Pump	**FCU1...3**	Fan coil unit (optional) (field supply)
f	Stop valve	**FHL1...3**	Floor heating loop (field supply)
g	Motorised 3-way valve	**T**	Room thermostat (optional) (field supply)

- **Drainage – Low points.** Provide drain taps at all low points of the system in order to allow complete drainage of the water circuit.
- **Drainage – Pressure relief valve.** Connect the drain hose properly to the drain to avoid water dripping out of the unit. See "7.4.4 To connect the drain hose to the drain" [▸ 72].
- **Air vents.** Provide air vents at all high points of the system, which must also be easily accessible for servicing. Two automatic air purges are provided in the indoor unit. Check that the air purges are NOT tightened too much, so that automatic release of air in the water circuit is possible.
- **Zn-coated parts.** Never use zinc coated parts in the water circuit. Because the internal water circuit of the unit uses copper piping, excessive corrosion may occur.
- **Non-brass metallic piping.** When using non-brass metallic piping, insulate the brass and non-brass properly so that they do NOT make contact with each other. This to prevent galvanic corrosion.
- **Valve – Change-over time.** When using a 2-way valve or a 3-way valve in the water circuit, the maximum change-over time of the valve must be 60 seconds.
- **Domestic hot water tank – Capacity.** To avoid stagnation of water, it is important that the storage capacity of the domestic hot water tank meets the daily consumption of domestic hot water.
- **Domestic hot water tank – After installation.** Immediately after installation, the domestic hot water tank must be flushed with fresh water. This procedure must be repeated at least once a day the first 5 consecutive days after installation.
- **Domestic hot water tank – Standstills.** In cases where during longer periods of time there is no consumption of hot water, the equipment MUST be flushed with fresh water before usage.

- **Domestic hot water tank – Disinfection.** For the disinfection function of the domestic hot water tank, see "10.5.6 Tank" [▸ 174].
- **Thermostatic mixing valves.** In accordance with the applicable legislation, it may be necessary to install thermostatic mixing valves.
- **Hygienic measures.** The installation must be in compliance with the applicable legislation and may require additional hygienic installation measures.
- **Recirculation pump.** In accordance with the applicable legislation, it may be required to connect a recirculation pump in between the hot water end point and the recirculation connection of the domestic hot water tank.



a Recirculation connection
b Hot water connection
c Shower
d Recirculation pump

- **Valve towards expansion vessel.** The valve towards the expansion vessel (if equipped) MUST be open.

8.2.2 Formula to calculate the expansion vessel pre-pressure

The pre-pressure (Pg) of the vessel depends on the installation height difference (H):

Pg=0.3+(H/10) (bar)

8.2.3 To check the water volume and flow rate

The indoor unit has an expansion vessel of 10 litre with a factory-set pre-pressure of 1 bar.

To make sure that the unit operates properly:

- You must check the minimum and maximum water volume.
- You might need to adjust the pre-pressure of the expansion vessel.

Minimum water volume

For EHVH*, there are no requirements for the minimum water volume.

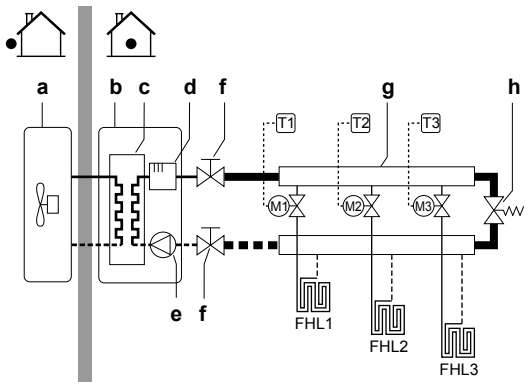
For EHVX*, check that the total water volume in the installation is minimum 10 litres.

INFORMATION

In critical processes, or in rooms with a high heat load, extra water might be required.

NOTICE

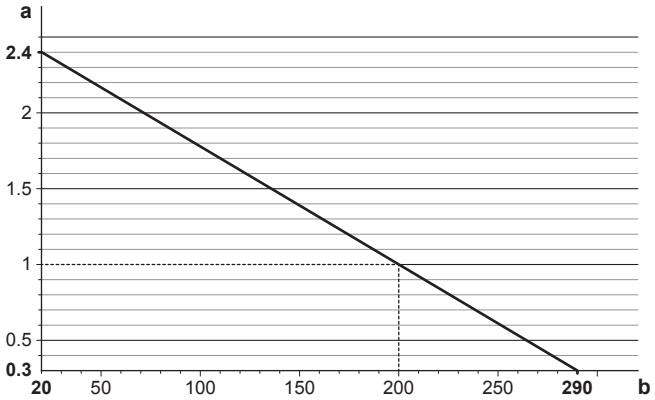
When circulation in each space heating/cooling loop is controlled by remotely controlled valves, it is important that the minimum water volume is guaranteed, even if all of the valves are closed.



a Outdoor unit
b Indoor unit
c Heat exchanger
d Backup heater
e Pump
f Shut-off valve
g Collector (field supply)
h Overpressure bypass valve (delivered as accessory)
FHL1...3 Floor heating loop (field supply)
T1...3 Individual room thermostat (optional)
M1...3 Individual motorised valve to control loop FHL1...3 (field supply)

Maximum water volume

Use the following graph to determine the maximum water volume for the calculated pre-pressure.



a Pre-pressure (bar)
b Maximum water volume (l)

Example: Maximum water volume and expansion vessel pre-pressure

Installation height difference[(a)]	Water volume	
	≤200 l	>200 l
≤7 m	No pre-pressure adjustment is required.	Do the following: ▪ Decrease the pre-pressure according to the required installation height difference. The pre-pressure should decrease by 0.1 bar for each metre below 7 m. ▪ Check if the water volume does NOT exceed the maximum allowed water volume.

Installation height difference[a]	Water volume	
	≤200 l	>200 l
>7 m	Do the following: ▪ Increase the pre-pressure according to the required installation height difference. The pre-pressure should increase by 0.1 bar for each metre above 7 m. ▪ Check if the water volume does NOT exceed the maximum allowed water volume.	The expansion vessel of the indoor unit is too small for the installation. In this case, it is recommended to install an extra vessel outside the unit.

[a] This is the height difference (m) between the highest point of the water circuit and the indoor unit. If the indoor unit is at the highest point of the installation, the installation height is 0 m.

Minimum flow rate

Check that the minimum flow rate in the installation is guaranteed in all conditions. This minimum flow rate is required during defrost/backup heater operation. For this purpose, use the overpressure bypass valve delivered with the unit.

Minimum required flow rate
12 l/min

NOTICE

When circulation in each or certain space heating loops is controlled by remotely controlled valves, it is important that the minimum flow rate is guaranteed, even if all valves are closed. In case the minimum flow rate cannot be reached, a flow error 7H will be generated (no heating or operation).

See the recommended procedure as described in "11.4 Checklist during commissioning" [▸ 209].

8.2.4 Changing the pre-pressure of the expansion vessel

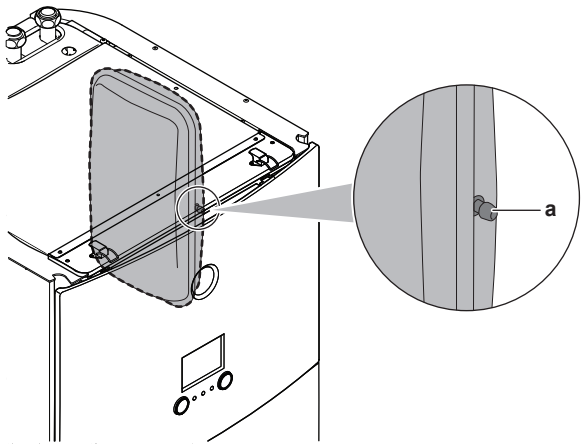
NOTICE

Only a licensed installer may adjust the pre-pressure of the expansion vessel.

The default pre-pressure of the expansion vessel is 1 bar. When it is required to change the pre-pressure, take following guidelines into account:

- Only use dry nitrogen to set the expansion vessel pre-pressure.
- Inappropriate setting of the expansion vessel pre-pressure will lead to malfunction of the system.

Changing the pre-pressure of the expansion vessel should be done by releasing or increasing nitrogen pressure through the Schrader valve of the expansion vessel.



a Schrader valve

8.2.5 To check the water volume: Examples

Example 1

The indoor unit is installed 5 m below the highest point in the water circuit. The total water volume in the water circuit is 100 l.

No actions or adjustments are required.

Example 2

The indoor unit is installed at the highest point in the water circuit. The total water volume in the water circuit is 250 l.

Actions:

- Because the total water volume (250 l) is more than the default water volume (200 l), the pre-pressure must be decreased.
- The required pre-pressure is:
  Pg = (0.3+(H/10)) bar = (0.3+(0/10)) bar = 0.3 bar
- The corresponding maximum water volume at 0.3 bar is 290 l. (See the graph in "Maximum water volume" [▸ 79]).
- Because 250 l is lower than 290 l, the expansion vessel is appropriate for the installation.

8.3 Connecting the refrigerant piping

WARNING

- Only use R32 as refrigerant. Other substances may cause explosions and accidents.
- R32 contains fluorinated greenhouse gases. Its global warming potential (GWP) value is 675. Do NOT vent these gases into the atmosphere.
- When charging refrigerant, ALWAYS use protective gloves and safety glasses.

8.3.1 About connecting the refrigerant piping

Before connecting the refrigerant piping

Make sure the outdoor and indoor unit are mounted.

Typical workflow

Connecting the refrigerant piping involves:

- Connecting the refrigerant piping to the outdoor unit
- Connecting the refrigerant piping to the indoor unit
- Insulating the refrigerant piping
- Keeping in mind the guidelines for:
  - Pipe bending
  - Flaring pipe ends
  - Brazing
  - Using the stop valves

8.3.2 Precautions when connecting the refrigerant piping

INFORMATION

Also read the precautions and requirements in the following chapters:

- "1 General safety precautions" [▶ 6]
- "8.1 Preparing refrigerant piping" [▶ 74]

DANGER: RISK OF BURNING/SCALDING

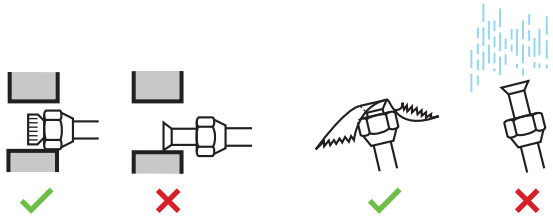
CAUTION

- Do NOT use mineral oil on flared part.
- Do NOT reuse piping from previous installations.
- NEVER install a drier to this R32 unit to guarantee its lifetime. The drying material may dissolve and damage the system.

NOTICE

Take the following precautions on refrigerant piping into account:

- Avoid anything but the designated refrigerant to get mixed into the refrigerant cycle (e.g. air).
- Only use R32 when adding refrigerant.
- Only use installation tools (e.g. manifold gauge set) that are exclusively used for R32 installations to withstand the pressure and to prevent foreign materials (e.g. mineral oils and moisture) from mixing into the system.
- Install the piping so that the flare is NOT subjected to mechanical stress.
- Protect the piping as described in the following table to prevent dirt, liquid or dust from entering the piping.
- Use caution when passing copper tubes through walls (see figure below).



Unit	Installation period	Protection method
Outdoor unit	>1 month	Pinch the pipe
	<1 month	Pinch or tape the pipe
Indoor unit	Regardless of the period	

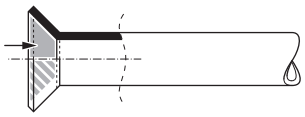
INFORMATION

Do NOT open the refrigerant stop valve before checking the refrigerant piping. When you need to charge additional refrigerant it is recommended to open the refrigerant stop valve after charging.

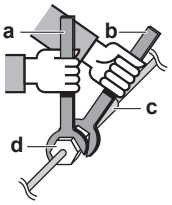
8.3.3 Guidelines when connecting the refrigerant piping

Take the following guidelines into account when connecting pipes:

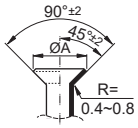
- Coat the flare inner surface with ether oil or ester oil when connecting a flare nut. Tighten 3 or 4 turns by hand, before tightening firmly.



- ALWAYS use 2 wrenches together when loosening a flare nut.
- ALWAYS use a spanner and torque wrench together to tighten the flare nut when connecting the piping. This to prevent nut cracking and leaks.



a Torque wrench
b Spanner
c Piping union
d Flare nut

Piping size (mm)	Tightening torque (N•m)	Flare dimensions (A) (mm)	Flare shape (mm)
Ø6.4	15~17	8.7~9.1	
Ø15.9	62~75	19.3~19.7	

8.3.4 Pipe bending guidelines

Use a pipe bender for bending. All pipe bends should be as gentle as possible (bending radius should be 30~40 mm or larger).

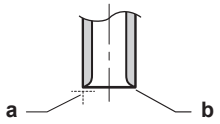
8.3.5 To flare the pipe end

CAUTION

- Incomplete flaring may cause refrigerant gas leakage.
- Do NOT re-use flares. Use new flares to prevent refrigerant gas leakage.
- Use flare nuts that are included with the unit. Using different flare nuts may cause refrigerant gas leakage.

1 Cut the pipe end with a pipe cutter.

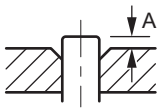
2 Remove burrs with the cut surface facing down so that the chips do NOT enter the pipe.



a Cut exactly at right angles.
b Remove burrs.

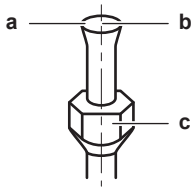
3 Remove the flare nut from the stop valve and put the flare nut on the pipe.

4 Flare the pipe. Set exactly at the position as shown in the following figure.



	Flare tool for R32 (clutch type)	Conventional flare tool	
		Clutch type (Ridgid-type)	Wing nut type (Imperial-type)
A	0~0.5 mm	1.0~1.5 mm	1.5~2.0 mm

5 Check that the flaring is properly made.

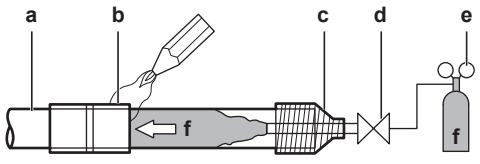


a Flare's inner surface MUST be flawless.
b The pipe end MUST be evenly flared in a perfect circle.
c Make sure the flare nut is fitted.

8.3.6 To braze the pipe end

The indoor unit and outdoor unit have flare connections. Connect both ends without brazing. If brazing should be needed, take the following into account:

- When brazing, blow through with nitrogen to prevent creation of large quantities of oxidised film on the inside of the piping. This film adversely affects valves and compressors in the refrigerating system and prevents proper operation.
- Set the nitrogen pressure to 20 kPa (0.2 bar) (just enough so it can be felt on the skin) with a pressure-reducing valve.



a Refrigerant piping
b Part to be brazed
c Taping
d Manual valve
e Pressure-reducing valve
f Nitrogen

- Do NOT use anti-oxidants when brazing pipe joints.
  Residue can clog pipes and break equipment.

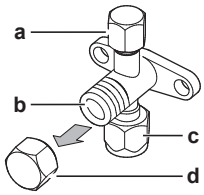
- Do NOT use flux when brazing copper-to-copper refrigerant piping. Use phosphor copper brazing filler alloy (BCuP), which does not require flux.
  Flux has an extremely harmful influence on refrigerant piping systems. For instance, if chlorine based flux is used, it will cause pipe corrosion or, in particular, if the flux contains fluorine, it will deteriorate the refrigerant oil.
- Always protect the surrounding surfaces (e.g. insulation foam) from heat when brazing.

8.3.7 Using the stop valve and service port

To handle the stop valve

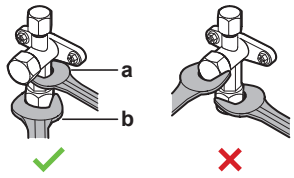
Take the following guidelines into account:

- The stop valves are factory closed.
- The following figure shows the stop valve parts required when handling the valve.



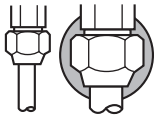
a Service port and service port cap
b Valve stem
c Field piping connection
d Stem cap

- Keep both stop valves open during operation.
- Do NOT apply excessive force to the valve stem. Doing so may break the valve body.
- ALWAYS make sure to secure the stop valve with a spanner, then loosen or tighten the flare nut with a torque wrench. Do NOT place the spanner on the stem cap, as this could cause a refrigerant leak.



a Spanner
b Torque wrench

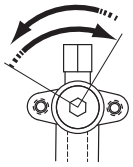
- When it is expected that the operating pressure will be low (e.g. when cooling will be performed while the outside air temperature is low), sufficiently seal the flare nut in the stop valve on the gas line with silicon sealant to prevent freezing.



Silicon sealant, make sure there is no gap.

To open/close the stop valve

1. Remove the stop valve cover.
2. Insert a hexagon wrench (liquid side: 4 mm, gas side: 4 mm) into the valve stem and turn the valve stem:



Counterclockwise to open
Clockwise to close

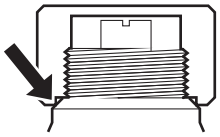
3 When the stop valve CANNOT be turned any further, stop turning.

4 Install the stop valve cover.

Result: The valve is now open/closed.

To handle the stem cap

- The stem cap is sealed where indicated with the arrow. Do NOT damage it.



- After handling the stop valve, tighten the stem cap, and check for refrigerant leaks.

Item	Tightening torque (N·m)
Stem cap, liquid side	13.5~16.5
Stem cap, gas side	22.5~27.5

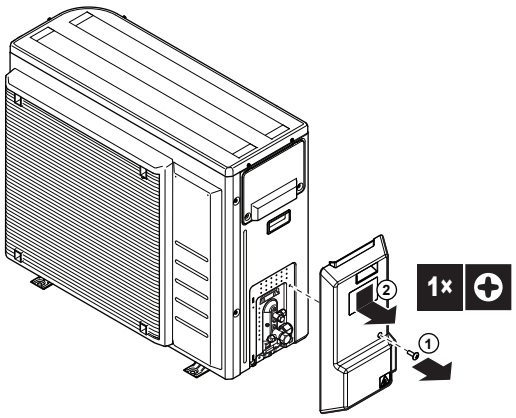
To handle the service cap

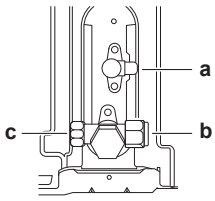
- ALWAYS use a charge hose equipped with a valve depressor pin, since the service port is a Schrader type valve.
- After handling the service port, tighten the service port cap, and check for refrigerant leaks.

Item	Tightening torque (N·m)
Service port cap	11.5~13.9

8.3.8 To connect the refrigerant piping to the outdoor unit

1 Connect the liquid refrigerant connection from the indoor unit to the liquid stop valve of the outdoor unit.





a Liquid stop valve
b Gas stop valve
c Service port

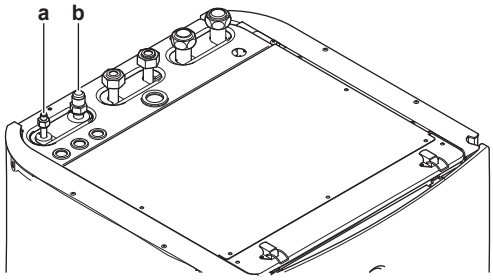
2 Connect the gas refrigerant connection from the indoor unit to the gas stop valve of the outdoor unit.

NOTICE

It is recommended that the refrigerant piping between indoor and outdoor unit is installed in a ducting or the refrigerant piping is wrapped with finishing tape.

8.3.9 To connect the refrigerant piping to the indoor unit

1 Connect the liquid stop valve from the outdoor unit to the refrigerant liquid connection of the indoor unit.



a Refrigerant liquid connection
b Refrigerant gas connection

2 Connect the gas stop valve from the outdoor unit to the refrigerant gas connection of the indoor unit.

NOTICE

It is recommended that the refrigerant piping between indoor and outdoor unit is installed in a ducting or the refrigerant piping is wrapped with finishing tape.

INFORMATION

When the indoor unit is installed in a place with limited space, an optional pipe bend (EKHVTC) kit can be installed to facilitate the connection to the refrigerant gas and liquid connections of the indoor unit. For installation instructions, see the instruction sheet of the pipe bend kit.

8.4 Checking the refrigerant piping

8.4.1 About checking the refrigerant piping

The outdoor unit's **internal** refrigerant piping has been factory tested for leaks. You only have to check the outdoor unit's **external** refrigerant piping.

Before checking the refrigerant piping

Make sure the refrigerant piping is connected between the outdoor unit and the indoor unit.

Typical workflow

Checking the refrigerant piping typically consists of the following stages:

1 Checking for leaks in the refrigerant piping.

2 Performing vacuum drying to remove all moisture, air or nitrogen from the refrigerant piping.

If there is a possibility of moisture being present in the refrigerant piping (for example, water may have entered the piping), first carry out the vacuum drying procedure below until all moisture has been removed.

8.4.2 Precautions when checking the refrigerant piping

INFORMATION

Also read the precautions and requirements in the following chapters:

- "1 General safety precautions" [▶ 6]
- "8.1 Preparing refrigerant piping" [▶ 74]

NOTICE

Use a 2-stage vacuum pump with a non-return valve that can evacuate to a gauge pressure of −100.7 kPa (−1.007 bar)(5 Torr absolute). Make sure the pump oil does not flow oppositely into the system while the pump is not working.

NOTICE

Use this vacuum pump for R32 exclusively. Using the same pump for other refrigerants may damage the pump and the unit.

NOTICE

- Connect the vacuum pump to the service port of the gas stop valve.
- Make sure that the gas stop valve and liquid stop valve are firmly closed before performing the leak test or vacuum drying.

8.4.3 To check for leaks

NOTICE

Do NOT exceed the unit's maximum working pressure (see "PS High" on the unit name plate).

NOTICE

ALWAYS use a recommended bubble test solution from your wholesaler.

NEVER use soap water:

- Soap water may cause cracking of components, such as flare nuts or stop valve caps.
- Soap water may contain salt, which absorbs moisture that will freeze when the piping gets cold.
- Soap water contains ammonia which may lead to corrosion of flared joints (between the brass flare nut and the copper flare).

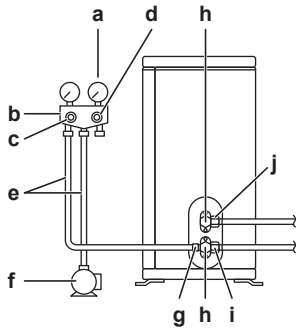
1 Charge the system with nitrogen gas up to a gauge pressure of at least 200 kPa (2 bar). It is recommended to pressurize to 3000 kPa (30 bar) in order to detect small leaks.

2 Check for leaks by applying the bubble test solution to all connections.

3 Discharge all nitrogen gas.

8.4.4 To perform vacuum drying

Connect the vacuum pump and manifold as follows:



a	Pressure meter
b	Gauge manifold
c	Low pressure valve (Lo)
d	High-pressure valve (Hi)
e	Charging hoses
f	Vacuum pump
g	Service port
h	Valve lids
i	Gas stop valve
j	Liquid stop valve

1 Vacuum the system until the pressure on the manifold indicates −0.1 MPa (−1 bar).

2 Leave as is for 4-5 minutes and check the pressure:

If the pressure...	Then...
Does not change	There is no moisture in the system. This procedure is finished.
Increases	There is moisture in the system. Go to the next step.

3 Vacuum the system for at least 2 hours to a manifold pressure of −0.1 MPa (−1 bar).

4 After turning the pump OFF, check the pressure for at least 1 hour.

5 If you do NOT reach the target vacuum or CANNOT maintain the vacuum for 1 hour, do the following:

- Check for leaks again.
- Perform vacuum drying again.

NOTICE

Make sure to open the stop valves after installing the refrigerant piping and performing vacuum drying. Running the system with the stop valves closed may break the compressor.

INFORMATION

After opening the stop valve, it is possible that the pressure in the refrigerant piping does NOT increase. This might be caused by e.g. the closed state of the expansion valve in the outdoor unit circuit, but does NOT present any problem for correct operation of the unit.

8.4.5 To insulate the refrigerant piping

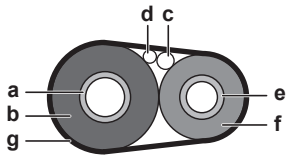
After finishing the leak test and vacuum drying, the piping must be insulated. Take into account the following points:

- Be sure to insulate the liquid and gas piping (for all units).
- Use heat resistant polyethylene foam which can withstand a temperature of 70°C for liquid piping and polyethylene foam which can withstand a temperature of 120°C for gas piping.
- Reinforce the insulation on the refrigerant piping according to the installation environment.

NOTICE

It is recommended that the refrigerant piping between indoor and outdoor unit is installed in a ducting or the refrigerant piping is wrapped with finishing tape.

1 Insulate and fix the refrigerant piping and cables as follows:



a Gas pipe
b Gas pipe insulation
c Interconnection cable
d Field wiring (if applicable)
e Liquid pipe
f Liquid pipe insulation
g Finishing tape

2 Install the service cover.

8.5 Charging refrigerant

8.5.1 About charging refrigerant

The outdoor unit is factory charged with refrigerant, but in some cases the following might be necessary:

What	When
Charging additional refrigerant	When the total liquid piping length is more than specified (see later).
Completely recharging refrigerant	**Example:** ▪ When relocating the system. ▪ After a leak.

Charging additional refrigerant

Before charging additional refrigerant, make sure the outdoor unit's **external** refrigerant piping is checked (leak test, vacuum drying).

INFORMATION

Depending on the units and/or the installation conditions, it might be necessary to connect electrical wiring before you can charge refrigerant.

Typical workflow – Charging additional refrigerant typically consists of the following stages:

1 Determining if and how much you have to charge additionally.
2 If necessary, charging additional refrigerant.
3 Filling in the fluorinated greenhouse gases label, and fixing it to the inside of the outdoor unit.

Completely recharging refrigerant

Before completely recharging refrigerant, make sure the following is done:

1 All refrigerant is recovered from the system.
2 The outdoor unit's **external** refrigerant piping is checked (leak test, vacuum drying).
3 Vacuum drying on the outdoor unit's **internal** refrigerant piping is performed.

NOTICE

Before completely recharging, perform vacuum drying on the outdoor unit's **internal** refrigerant piping as well.

Typical workflow – Completely recharging refrigerant typically consists of the following stages:

1 Determining how much refrigerant to charge.
2 Charging refrigerant.
3 Filling in the fluorinated greenhouse gases label, and fixing it to the inside of the outdoor unit.

8.5.2 Precautions when charging refrigerant

INFORMATION

Also read the precautions and requirements in the following chapters:

- General safety precautions
- Preparation

8.5.3 To determine the additional refrigerant amount

WARNING

If the total refrigerant charge in the system is ≥1.84 kg (i.e. if the piping length is ≥27 m), you need to comply with the minimum floor area requirements for the indoor unit. For more information, see "7.1.3 Installation site requirements of the indoor unit" [▶ 58].

If the total liquid piping length is…	Then…
≤10 m	Do NOT add additional refrigerant.
>10 m	R=(total length (m) of liquid piping–10 m)×0.020 R=Additional charge (kg) (rounded in units of 0.01 kg)

INFORMATION

Piping length is the one-way length of liquid piping.

8.5.4 To determine the complete recharge amount

INFORMATION

If a complete recharge is necessary, the total refrigerant charge is: the factory refrigerant charge (see unit name plate) + the determined additional amount.

8.5.5 To charge additional refrigerant

WARNING

- Only use R32 as refrigerant. Other substances may cause explosions and accidents.
- R32 contains fluorinated greenhouse gases. Its global warming potential (GWP) value is 675. Do NOT vent these gases into the atmosphere.
- When charging refrigerant, ALWAYS use protective gloves and safety glasses.

CAUTION

To avoid compressor breakdown, do NOT charge more than the specified amount of refrigerant.

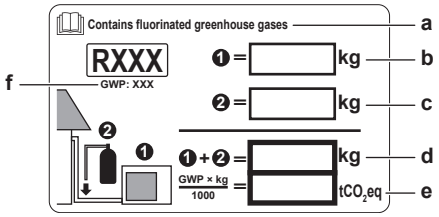
Prerequisite: Before charging refrigerant, make sure the refrigerant piping is connected and checked (leak test and vacuum drying).

1. Connect the refrigerant cylinder to the service port.
2. Charge the additional refrigerant amount.
3. Open the gas stop valve.

If pump down is needed in case of dismantling or relocating the system, see "15.2 To pump down" [▸ 236] for more details.

8.5.6 To fix the fluorinated greenhouse gases label

1. Fill in the label as follows:



a If a multilingual fluorinated greenhouse gases label is delivered with the unit (see accessories), peel off the applicable language and stick it on top of **a**.
b Factory refrigerant charge: see unit name plate
c Additional refrigerant amount charged
d Total refrigerant charge
e **Quantity of fluorinated greenhouse gases** of the total refrigerant charge expressed as tonnes CO_2 equivalent.
f GWP = Global warming potential

NOTICE

Applicable legislation on **fluorinated greenhouse gases** requires that the refrigerant charge of the unit is indicated both in weight and CO_2 equivalent.

Formula to calculate the quantity in CO_2 equivalent tonnes: GWP value of the refrigerant × total refrigerant charge [in kg] / 1000

Use the GWP value mentioned on the refrigerant charge label.

2 Fix the label on the inside of the outdoor unit near the gas and liquid stop valves.

8.6 Connecting water piping

8.6.1 About connecting the water piping

Before connecting the water piping

Make sure the outdoor and indoor unit are mounted.

Typical workflow

Connecting the water piping typically consists of the following stages:

1 Connecting the water piping to the indoor unit.
2 Connecting the recirculation piping.
3 Connecting the drain hose to the drain.
4 Filling the water circuit.
5 Filling the domestic hot water tank.
6 Insulating the water piping.

8.6.2 Precautions when connecting the water piping

8.6.3 To connect the water piping

NOTICE

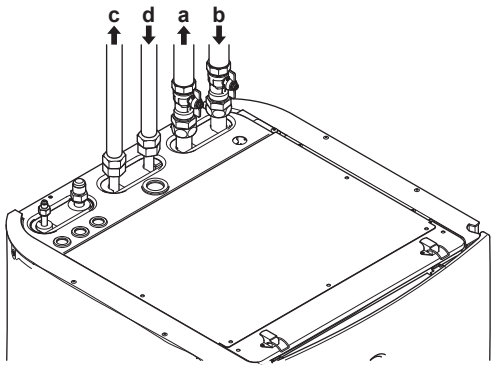
Do NOT use excessive force when connecting the piping. Deformation of the piping can cause malfunctioning of the unit.

To facilitate service and maintenance, 2 shut-off valves and 1 overpressure bypass valve are provided. Mount the shut-off valves on the space heating water inlet and space heating water outlet. To ensure the minimum flow rate (and prevent overpressure), install the overpressure bypass valve on the space heating water outlet.

1 Install the shut-off valves on the space heating water pipes.

2 Screw the indoor unit nuts on the shut-off valve.

3 Connect the domestic hot water in and out pipes to the indoor unit.



a Space heating/cooling water OUT (screw connection, 1")
b Space heating/cooling water IN (screw connection, 1")
c Domestic hot water OUT (screw connection, 3/4")
d Domestic cold water IN (cold water supply)(screw connection, 3/4")

NOTICE

It is recommended to install shut-off valves to domestic cold water in and domestic hot water out connections. These shut-off valves are field supplied.

NOTICE

To avoid damage to the surroundings in case of water leakage, it is recommended to close the domestic cold water inlet shut-off valves during periods of absence.

NOTICE

Overpressure bypass valve (delivered as accessory). We recommend to install the overpressure bypass valve in the space heating water circuit.

- Mind the minimum water volume when choosing the installation location of the overpressure bypass valve (at the indoor unit, or at the collector). See "8.2.3 To check the water volume and flow rate" [▸ 78].
- Mind the minimum flow rate when adjusting the overpressure bypass valve setting. See "8.2.3 To check the water volume and flow rate" [▸ 78] and "11.4.1 Minimum flow rate" [▸ 209].

NOTICE

Install air purge valves at all local high points.

NOTICE

A pressure relief valve (field supply) with an opening pressure of maximum 10 bar (=1 MPa) must be installed on the domestic cold water inlet connection in accordance with the applicable legislation.

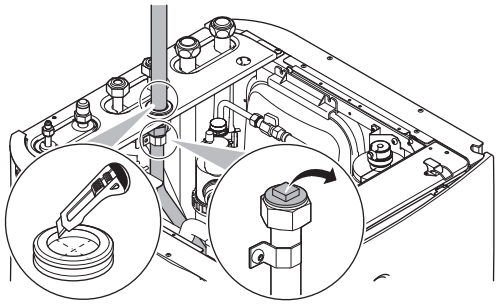
NOTICE

- A drain device and pressure relief device must be installed on the cold water inlet connection of the domestic hot water cylinder.
- To avoid back siphonage, it is recommended to install a non-return valve on the water inlet of the domestic hot water tank in accordance with the applicable legislation.
- It is recommended to install a pressure reducing valve on the cold water inlet in accordance with the applicable legislation.
- An expansion vessel should be installed on the cold water inlet in accordance with the applicable legislation.
- It is recommended to install the pressure relief valve on a higher position than the top of the domestic hot water tank. Heating of the domestic hot water tank causes water to expand and without pressure relief valve the water pressure inside the tank can rise above the tank design pressure. Also the field installation (piping, tapping points, etc.) connected to the tank is subjected to this high pressure. To prevent this, a pressure relief valve needs to be installed. The overpressure prevention depends on the correct operation of the field installed pressure relief valve. If this is NOT working correctly, overpressure will deform the tank and water leakage may occur. To confirm good operation, regular maintenance is required.

8.6.4 To connect the recirculation piping

Prerequisite: Only required if you need recirculation in your system.

1. Remove the top panel from the unit, see "7.2.4 To open the indoor unit" [▸ 61].
2. Cut out the rubber grommet on top of the unit, and remove the stop. The recirculation connector is placed below the hole.
3. Route the recirculation piping through the grommet and connect it to the recirculation connector.



4. Reattach the top panel.

8.6.5 To fill the water circuit

To fill the water circuit, use a field supply filling kit. Make sure you comply with the applicable legislation.

INFORMATION

Make sure both air purge valves (one on the magnetic filter and one on the backup heater) are open.

8.6.6 To fill the domestic hot water tank

1. Open every hot water tap in turn to purge air from the system pipe work.

2 Open the cold water supply valve.

3 Close all water taps after all air is purged.

4 Check for water leaks.

5 Manually operate the field-installed pressure relief valve to ensure a free water flow through the discharge pipe.

8.6.7 To insulate the water piping

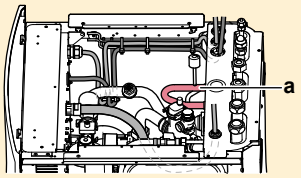
The piping in the complete water circuit MUST be insulated to prevent condensation during cooling operation and reduction of the heating and cooling capacity.

If the temperature is higher than 30°C and the humidity is higher than RH 80%, the thickness of the insulation materials should be at least 20 mm to prevent condensation on the surface of the insulation.

9 Electrical installation

WARNING

Make sure that the electrical wiring does NOT touch the refrigerant gas pipe, which can be very hot.



a Refrigerant gas pipe

In this chapter

9.1 About connecting the electrical wiring

Before connecting the electrical wiring

Make sure:

- The refrigerant piping is connected and checked
- The water piping is connected

Typical workflow

Connecting the electrical wiring typically consists of the following stages:

1 Making sure the power supply system complies with the electrical specifications of the heat pump.
2 Connecting the electrical wiring to the outdoor unit.
3 Connecting the electrical wiring to the indoor unit.
4 Connecting the main power supply.
5 Connecting the backup heater power supply.
6 Connecting the shut-off valves.
7 Connecting the electrical meters.
8 Connecting the domestic hot water pump.
9 Connecting the alarm output.
10 Connecting the space cooling/heating ON/OFF output.
11 Connecting the changeover to an external heat source.
12 Connecting the power consumption digital inputs.
13 Connecting the safety thermostat.

9.1.1 Precautions when connecting the electrical wiring

DANGER: RISK OF ELECTROCUTION

WARNING

ALWAYS use multicore cable for power supply cables.

INFORMATION

Also read the precautions and requirements in the "1 General safety precautions" [▸ 6].

WARNING

- All wiring MUST be performed by an authorised electrician and MUST comply with the applicable legislation.
- Make electrical connections to the fixed wiring.
- All components procured on-site and all electrical construction MUST comply with the applicable legislation.

WARNING

- If the power supply has a missing or wrong N-phase, equipment might break down.
- Establish proper earthing. Do NOT earth the unit to a utility pipe, surge absorber, or telephone earth. Incomplete earthing may cause electrical shock.
- Install the required fuses or circuit breakers.
- Secure the electrical wiring with cable ties so that the cables do NOT come in contact with sharp edges or piping, particularly on the high-pressure side.
- Do NOT use taped wires, stranded conductor wires, extension cords, or connections from a star system. They can cause overheating, electrical shock or fire.
- Do NOT install a phase advancing capacitor, because this unit is equipped with an inverter. A phase advancing capacitor will reduce performance and may cause accidents.

CAUTION

Do NOT push or place redundant cable length in the unit.

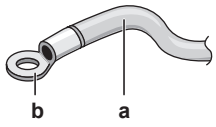
NOTICE

The distance between the high voltage and low voltage cables should be at least 50 mm.

9.1.2 Guidelines when connecting the electrical wiring

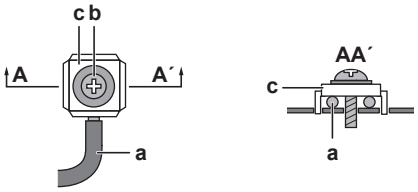
Keep the following in mind:

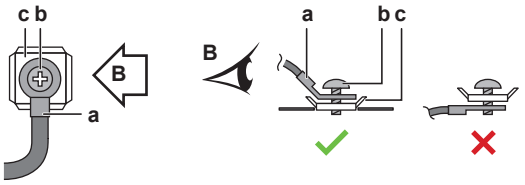
- If stranded conductor wires are used, install a round crimp-style terminal on the end of the wire. Place the round crimp-style terminal on the wire up to the covered part and fasten the terminal with the appropriate tool.



a Stranded conductor wire
b Round crimp-style terminal

- Use the following methods for installing wires:

Wire type	Installation method
Single-core wire	 **a** Curled single-core wire **b** Screw **c** Flat washer

Wire type	Installation method
Stranded conductor wire with round crimp-style terminal	 **a** Terminal **b** Screw **c** Flat washer ✓ Allowed ✕ NOT allowed

Tightening torques

Item	Tightening torque (N•m)
M4 (X1M)	1.2~1.5
M4 (earth)	

9.1.3 Specifications of standard wiring components

Component		ERGA04+06DAV3	ERGA08DAV3	ERGA04~08DAV3A
Power supply cable	MCA[(a)]	19.9 A	24.0 A	15.9 A
	Voltage	230 V		
	Phase	1~		
	Frequency	50 Hz		
	Wire sizes	Must comply with applicable legislation		
Interconnection cable		Minimum cable section of 1.5 mm² and applicable for 230 V		
Recommended field fuse		20 A	25 A	16 A
Earth leakage circuit breaker		Must comply with applicable legislation		

[(a)] MCA=Minimum circuit ampacity. Stated values are maximum values (see electrical data of combination with indoor units for exact values).

9.1.4 About electrical compliance

Only for ERGA04~08DAV3 (not for ERGA04~08DAV3A)

Equipment complying with EN/IEC 61000-3-12 (European/International Technical Standard setting the limits for harmonic currents produced by equipment connected to public low-voltage systems with input current >16 A and ≤75 A per phase.).

Only for the backup heater of the indoor unit

See "9.3.2 To connect the backup heater power supply" [▸ 110].

9.1.5 About preferential kWh rate power supply

Electricity companies throughout the world work hard to provide reliable electric service at competitive prices and are often authorized to bill clients at benefit rates. E.g. time-of-use rates, seasonal rates, Wärmepumpentarif in Germany and Austria, ...

This equipment allows for connection to such preferential kWh rate power supply delivery systems.

Consult with the electricity company acting as provider at the site where this equipment is to be installed to know whether it is appropriate to connect the equipment in one of the preferential kWh rate power supply delivery systems available, if any.

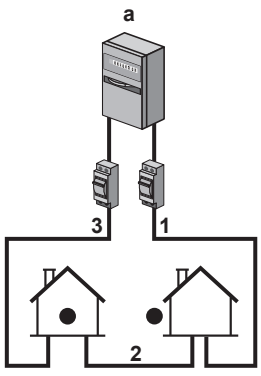
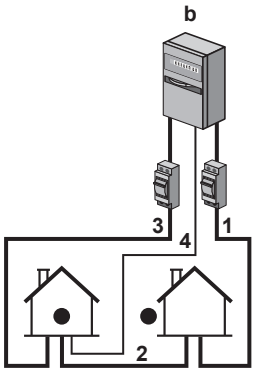
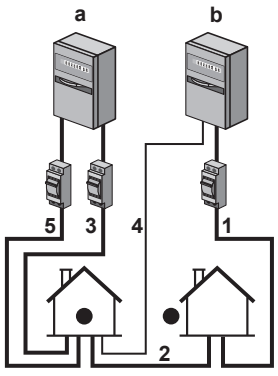
When the equipment is connected to such preferential kWh rate power supply, the electricity company is allowed to:

- interrupt power supply to the equipment for certain periods of time;
- demand that the equipment only consumes a limited amount of electricity during certain periods of time.

The indoor unit is designed to receive an input signal by which the unit switches into forced off mode. At that moment, the outdoor unit compressor will not operate.

The wiring to the unit is different depending on whether the power supply is interrupted or not.

9.1.6 Overview of electrical connections except external actuators

Normal power supply	Preferential kWh rate power supply	
	Power supply is NOT interrupted	**Power supply is interrupted**
	 During preferential kWh rate power supply activation, power supply is NOT interrupted. The outdoor unit is turned off by the control. **Remark:** The electricity company must always allow the power consumption of the indoor unit.	 During preferential kWh rate power supply activation, power supply is interrupted immediately or after some time by the electricity company. In this case, the indoor unit must be powered by a separate normal power supply.

a Normal power supply

b Preferential kWh rate power supply

1 Power supply for outdoor unit

2 Power supply and interconnection cable to indoor unit

3 Power supply for backup heater

4 Preferential kWh rate power supply (voltage free contact)

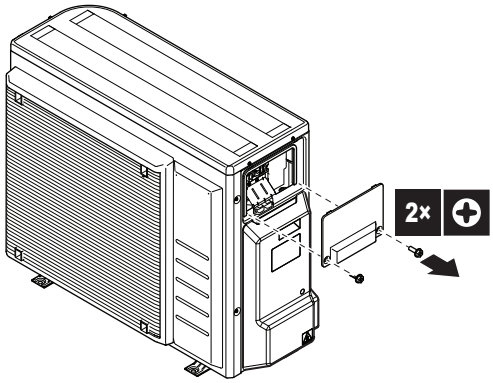
5 Normal kWh rate power supply (to power the indoor unit PCB in the event of power supply interruption of the preferential kWh rate power supply)

9.2 Connections to the outdoor unit

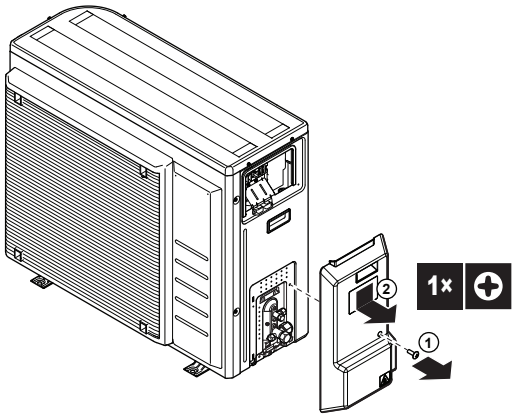
Item	Description
Power supply cable	See "9.2.1 To connect the electrical wiring to the outdoor unit" [▸ 102].
Interconnection cable	

9.2.1 To connect the electrical wiring to the outdoor unit

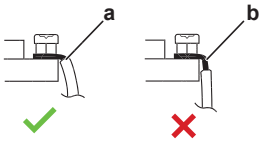
1 Remove the switch box cover.



2 Remove the refrigerant piping cover.



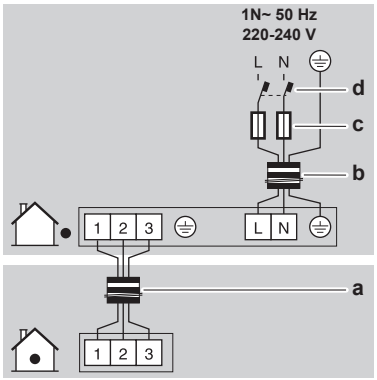
3 Strip insulation (20 mm) from the wires.



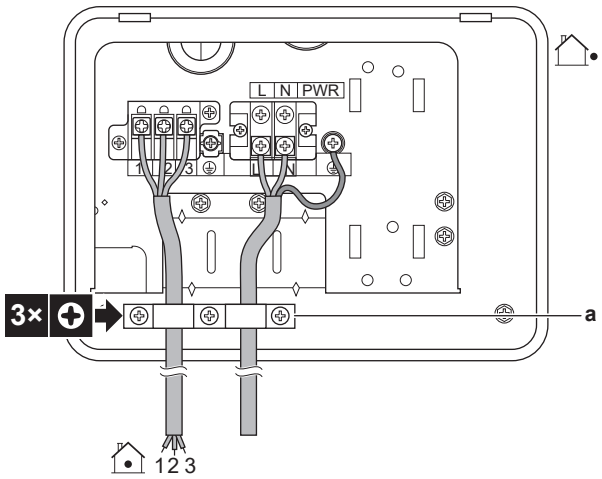
a Strip wire end to this point

b An excessive strip length may cause electrical shock or leakage

4 Connect the interconnection cable and power supply as follows. Ensure stress relief by using the wire clamp.



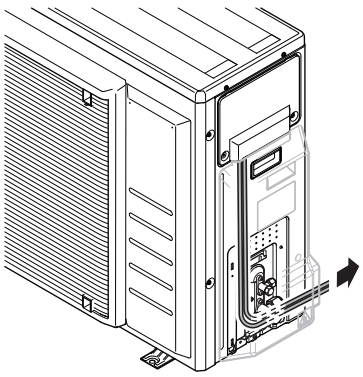
a Interconnection cable
b Power supply cable
c Fuse
d Earth leakage circuit breaker



a Wire clamp

5 Reattach the switch box cover.

6 Reattach the refrigerant piping cover. Make sure the cables are routed under the cover as shown:



7 Connect an earth leakage circuit breaker and fuse to the power supply line.

9.3 Connections to the indoor unit

Item	Description
Power supply (main)	See "9.3.1 To connect the main power supply" [▶ 108].
Power supply (backup heater)	See "9.3.2 To connect the backup heater power supply" [▶ 110].
Shut-off valve	See "9.3.3 To connect the shut-off valve" [▶ 112].
Electricity meters	See "9.3.4 To connect the electricity meters" [▶ 113].
Domestic hot water pump	See "9.3.5 To connect the domestic hot water pump" [▶ 114].
Alarm output	See "9.3.6 To connect the alarm output" [▶ 115].
Space cooling/heating operation control	See "9.3.7 To connect the space cooling/heating ON/OFF output" [▶ 116].
Changeover to external heat source control	See "9.3.8 To connect the changeover to external heat source" [▶ 117].
Power consumption digital inputs	See "9.3.9 To connect the power consumption digital inputs" [▶ 118].
Safety thermostat	See "9.3.10 To connect the safety thermostat (normally closed contact)" [▶ 119].
Smart Grid	See "9.3.11 To connect a Smart Grid" [▶ 120].

Item	Description	
Room thermostat (wired or wireless)		**In case of wireless room thermostat**, see: ▪ Installation manual of the wireless room thermostat ▪ Addendum book for optional equipment **In case of wired room thermostat without multi-zoning base unit**, see: ▪ Installation manual of the wired room thermostat ▪ Addendum book for optional equipment **In case of wired room thermostat with multi-zoning base unit**, see: ▪ Installation manual of the wired room thermostat (digital or analogue) + multi-zoning base unit ▪ Addendum book for optional equipment ▪ In this case: - You need to connect the wired room thermostat (digital or analogue) to the multi-zoning base unit - You need to connect the multi-zoning base unit to the outdoor unit - For cooling/heating operation, you also need to implement a relay (field supply, see addendum book for optional equipment)
		Wires: 0.75 mm² Maximum running current: 100 mA
		For the main zone: ▪ [2.9] `Control` ▪ [2.A] `Thermostat type` For the additional zone: ▪ [3.A] `Thermostat type` ▪ [3.9] (read-only) `Control`

Item	Description
Heat pump convector	There are different controllers and setups possible for the heat pump convectors. Depending on the setup, you also need to implement a relay (field supply, see addendum book for optional equipment). For more information, see: ▪ Installation manual of the heat pump convectors ▪ Installation manual of the heat pump convector options ▪ Addendum book for optional equipment
	Wires: 0.75 mm² Maximum running current: 100 mA
	For the main zone: ▪ [2.9] `Control` ▪ [2.A] `Thermostat type` For the additional zone: ▪ [3.A] `Thermostat type` ▪ [3.9] (read-only) `Control`
Remote outdoor sensor	See: ▪ Installation manual of the remote outdoor sensor ▪ Addendum book for optional equipment
	Wires: 2×0.75 mm²
	[9.B.1]=1 (`External sensor` = `Outdoor`) [9.B.2] `Ext. amb. sensor offset` [9.B.3] `Averaging time`
Remote indoor sensor	See: ▪ Installation manual of the remote indoor sensor ▪ Addendum book for optional equipment
	Wires: 2×0.75 mm²
	[9.B.1]=2 (`External sensor` = `Room`) [1.7] `Room sensor offset`

Item	Description	
Human Comfort Interface		See: ▪ Installation and operation manual of the Human Comfort Interface ▪ Addendum book for optional equipment
		Wires: 2×(0.75~1.25 mm²) Maximum length: 500 m
		[2.9] `Control` [1.6] `Room sensor offset`
WLAN adapter module		See: ▪ Installation manual of the WLAN adapter module ▪ Addendum book for optional equipment
		Use the cable delivered with the WLAN adapter module.
		[D] `Wireless gateway`
LAN adapter		See: ▪ Installation manual of the LAN adapter ▪ Addendum book for optional equipment
		Wires: 2×(0.75~1.25 mm²). Must be sheathed. Maximum length: 200 m
		See below ("LAN adapter – System requirements").

LAN adapter – System requirements

The requirements posed on the system depend on the LAN adapter application/ system layout (app control, or Smart Grid application).

App control:

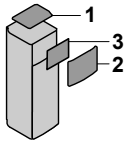
Smart Grid application:

Item	Requirement
LAN adapter software	It is recommended to ALWAYS keep the LAN adapter software up-to-date.
Unit control method	On the user interface, make sure to set [2.9]=2 (`Control` = `Room thermostat`)
Domestic hot water settings	To allow for energy buffering in the domestic hot water tank, on the user interface, make sure to set [9.2.1]=4 (`Domestic hot water` = `Integrated`).
Power consumption control settings	On the user interface, make sure to set: ▪ [9.9.1]=1 (`Power consumption control` = `Continuous`) ▪ [9.9.2]=1 (`Type` = `kW`)

9.3.1 To connect the main power supply

1 Open the following (see "7.2.4 To open the indoor unit" [▶ 61]):

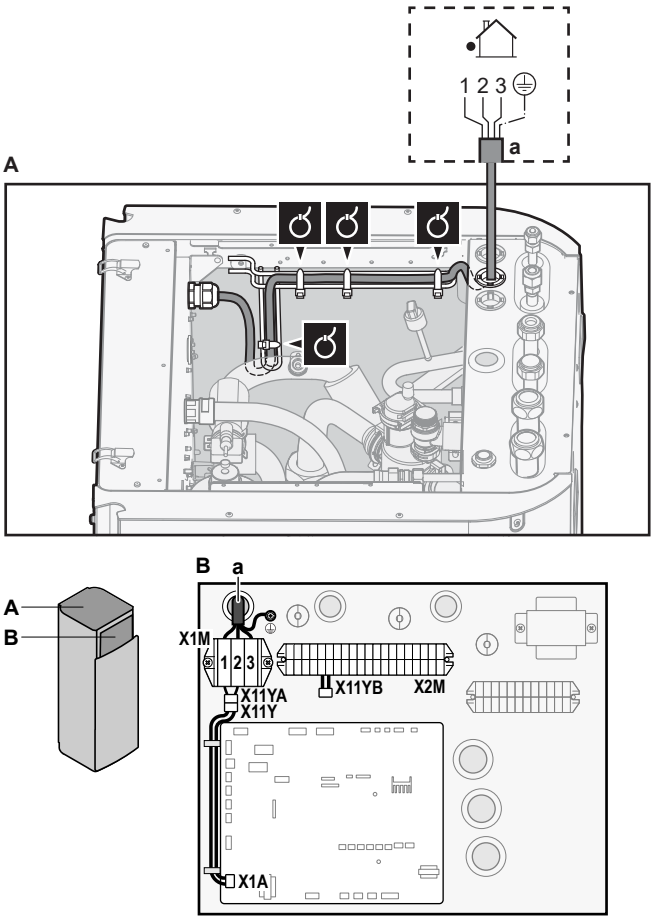
1	Top panel
2	User interface panel
3	Upper switch box cover



2 Connect the main power supply.

In case of normal kWh rate power supply

	Interconnection cable (= main power supply)	Wires: (3+GND)×1.5 mm²
	—	

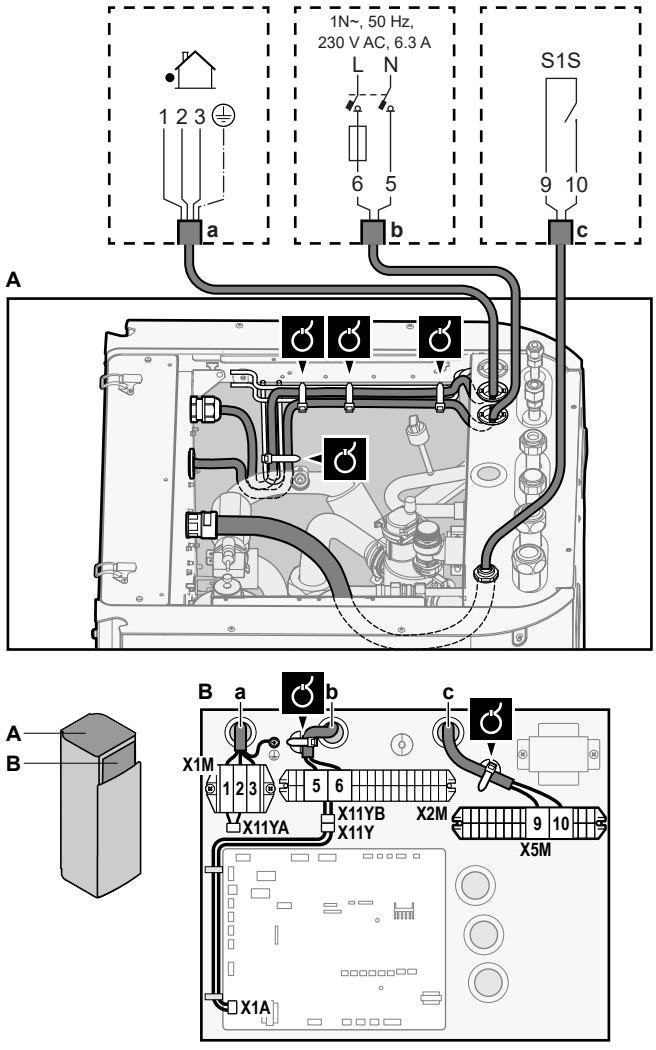


a Interconnection cable (=main power supply)

In case of preferential kWh rate power supply

	Interconnection cable (= main power supply)	Wires: (3+GND)×1.5 mm²
	Normal kWh rate power supply	Wires: 1N Maximum running current: 6.3 A
	Preferential kWh rate power supply contact	Wires: 2×(0.75~1.25 mm²) Maximum length: 50 m. Preferential kWh rate power supply contact: 16 V DC detection (voltage supplied by PCB). The voltage-free contact shall ensure the minimum applicable load of 15 V DC, 10 mA.
	[9.8] `Benefit kWh power supply`	

Connect X11Y to X11YB.



a Interconnection cable (=main power supply)
b Normal kWh rate power supply
c Preferential power supply contact

3 Fix the cables with cable ties to the cable tie mountings.

INFORMATION

In case of preferential kWh rate power supply, connect X11Y to X11YB. The necessity of separate normal kWh rate power supply to indoor unit (b) X2M/5+6 depends on the type of preferential kWh rate power supply.

Separate connection to the indoor unit is required:

- if preferential kWh rate power supply is interrupted when active, OR
- if no power consumption of the indoor unit is allowed at the preferential kWh rate power supply when active.

9.3.2 To connect the backup heater power supply

	Backup heater type	Power supply	Wires
	*3V	1N~ 230 V	2+GND
	*6V	1N~ 230 V (6V)	2+GND
		3~ 230 V (6T1)	3+GND
	*9W	3N~ 400 V	4+GND
	[9.3] `Backup heater`		

WARNING

The backup heater MUST have a dedicated power supply and MUST be protected by the safety devices required by the applicable legislation.

CAUTION

To guarantee the unit is completely earthed, always connect the backup heater power supply and the earth cable.

The backup heater capacity can vary, depending on the indoor unit model. Make sure that the power supply is in accordance with the backup heater capacity, as listed in the table below.

Backup heater type	Backup heater capacity	Power supply	Maximum running current	Z_{max}
*3V	3 kW	1N~ 230 V	13 A[(a)]	0.34 Ω
*6V	2 kW	1N~ 230 V[(b)]	9 A	—
	4 kW	1N~ 230 V[(b)]	17 A[(c)(a)]	0.22 Ω
	6 kW	1N~ 230 V[(b)]	26 A[(c)(a)]	0.22 Ω
	2 kW	3~ 230 V[(d)]	5 A	—
	4 kW	3~ 230 V[(d)]	10 A	—
	6 kW	3~ 230 V[(d)]	15 A	—
*9W	3 kW	3N~ 400 V	4 A	—
	6 kW	3N~ 400 V	9 A	—
	9 kW	3N~ 400 V	13 A	—

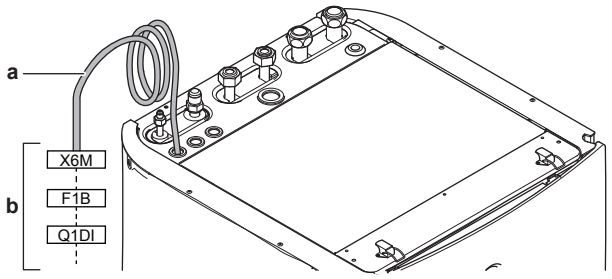
(a) This equipment complies with EN/IEC 61000-3-11 (European/International Technical Standard setting the limits for voltage changes, voltage fluctuations and flicker in public low-voltage supply systems for equipment with rated current ≤75 A) provided that the system impedance Z_{sys} is less than or equal to Z_{max} at the interface point between the user's supply and the public system. It is the responsibility of the installer or user of the equipment to ensure, by consultation with the distribution network operator if necessary, that the equipment is connected only to a supply with a system impedance Z_{sys} less than or equal to Z_{max}.

(b) 6V

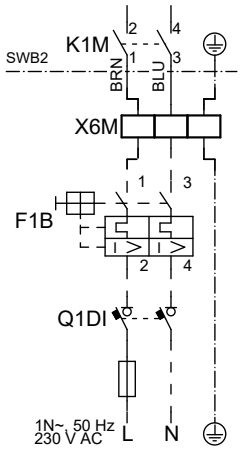
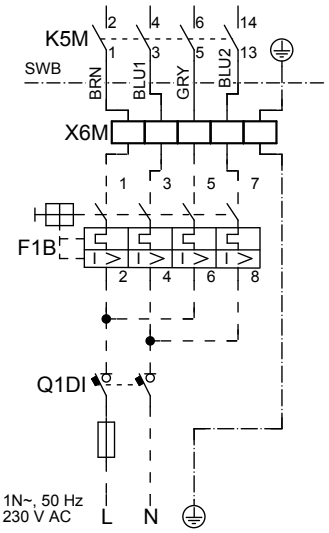
(c) Electrical equipment complying with EN/IEC 61000-3-12 (European/International Technical Standard setting the limits for harmonic currents produced by equipment connected to public low-voltage systems with input current >16 A and ≤75 A per phase).

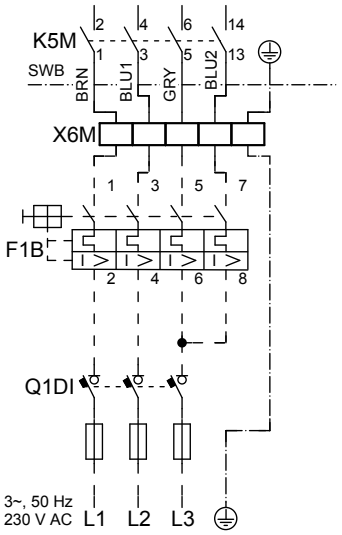
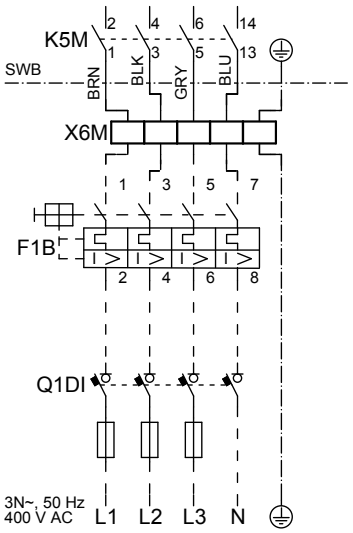
(d) 6T1

Connect the power supply of the backup heater as follows:



a Factory-mounted cable connected to the contactor of the backup heater, inside the switch box (K1M)
b Field wiring (see table below)

Model (power supply)	Connections to backup heater power supply
*3V (1N~ 230 V)	
*6V (6V: 1N~ 230 V)	

Model (power supply)	Connections to backup heater power supply
*6V (6T1: 3~ 230 V)	
*9W (3N~ 400 V)	

NOTICE

Do NOT cut or remove the backup heater power supply cable.

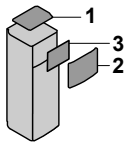
9.3.3 To connect the shut-off valve

INFORMATION

Shut-off valve usage example. In case of one LWT zone, and a combination of underfloor heating and heat pump convectors, install a shut-off valve before the underfloor heating to prevent condensation on the floor during cooling operation. For more information, see the installer reference guide.

	Wires: 2×0.75 mm² Maximum running current: 100 mA 230 V AC supplied by PCB
	[2.D] `Shut off valve`

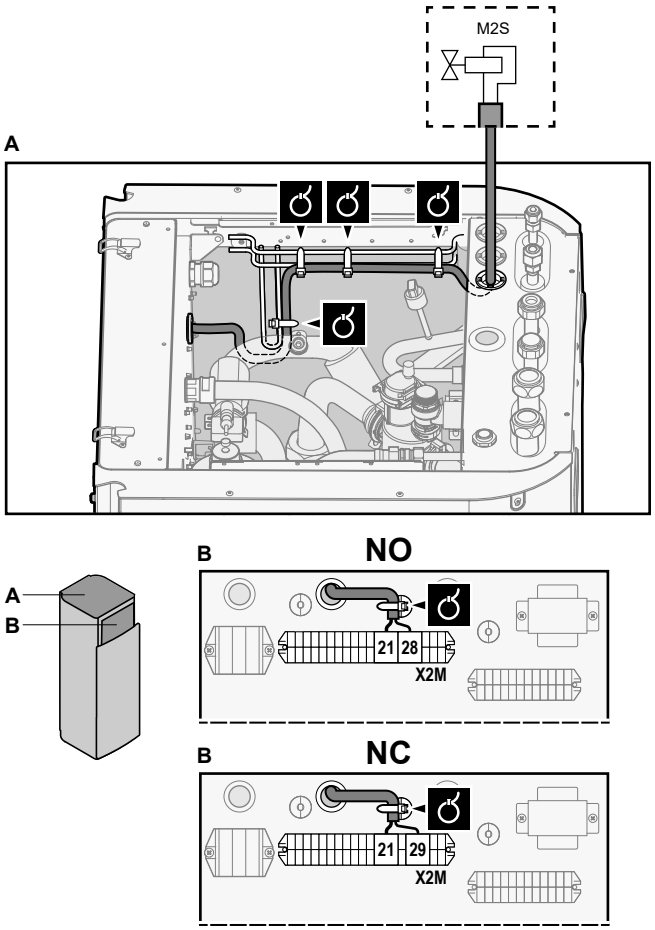
1 Open the following (see "7.2.4 To open the indoor unit" [▶ 61]):

1	Top panel	
2	User interface panel	
3	Upper switch box cover	

2 Connect the valve control cable to the appropriate terminals as shown in the illustration below.

NOTICE

Wiring is different for a NC (normally closed) valve and a NO (normally open) valve.



3 Fix the cable with cable ties to the cable tie mountings.

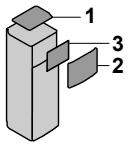
9.3.4 To connect the electricity meters

	Wires: 2 (per meter)×0.75 mm² Electricity meters: 12 V DC pulse detection (voltage supplied by PCB)
	[9.A] `Energy metering`

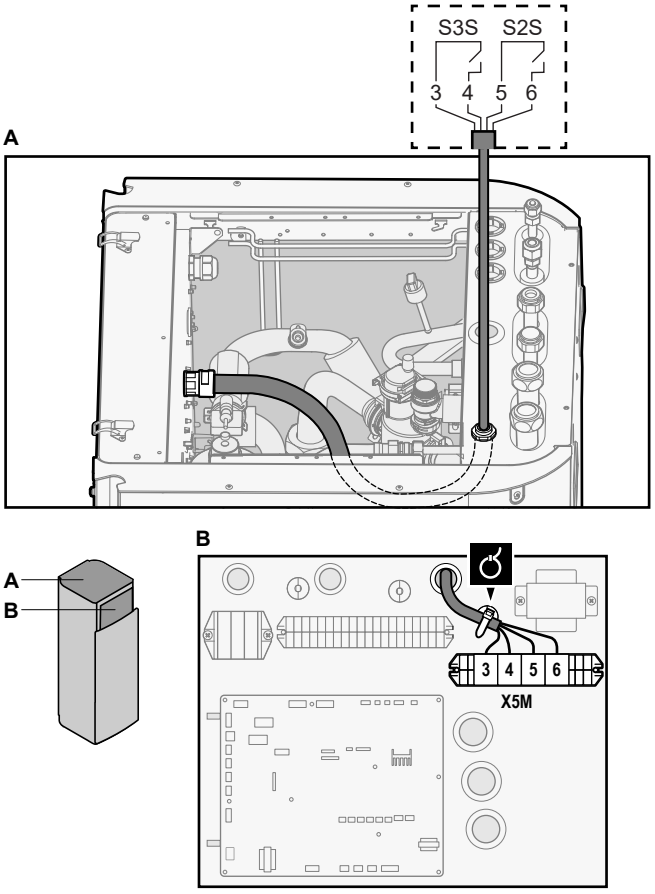
INFORMATION

In case of an electricity meter with transistor output, check the polarity. The positive polarity MUST be connected to X5M/6 and X5M/4; the negative polarity to X5M/5 and X5M/3.

1 Open the following (see "7.2.4 To open the indoor unit" [▸ 61]):

1	Top panel	
2	User interface panel	
3	Upper switch box cover	

2 Connect the electricity meters cable to the appropriate terminals as shown in the illustration below.

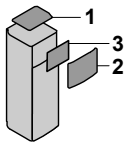


3 Fix the cable with cable ties to the cable tie mountings.

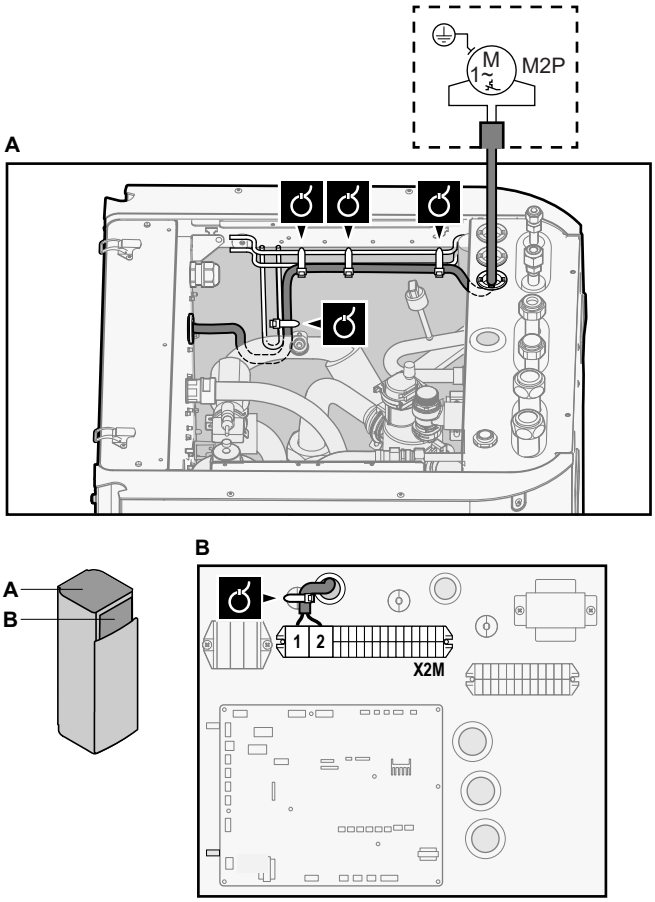
9.3.5 To connect the domestic hot water pump

	Wires: (2+GND)×0.75 mm² DHW pump output. Maximum load: 2 A (inrush), 230 V AC, 1 A (continuous)
	[9.2.2] `DHW pump` [9.2.3] `DHW pump schedule`

1 Open the following (see "7.2.4 To open the indoor unit" [▸ 61]):

1	Top panel	
2	User interface panel	
3	Upper switch box cover	

2 Connect the domestic hot water pump cable to the appropriate terminals as shown in the illustration below.



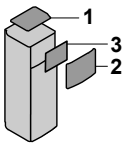
3 Fix the cable with cable ties to the cable tie mountings.

9.3.6 To connect the alarm output

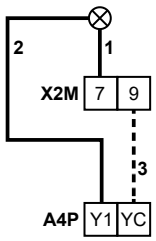
	Wires: (2+1)×0.75 mm² Maximum load: 0.3 A, 250 V AC
	[9.D] `Alarm output`

1 Open the following (see "7.2.4 To open the indoor unit" [▸ 61]):

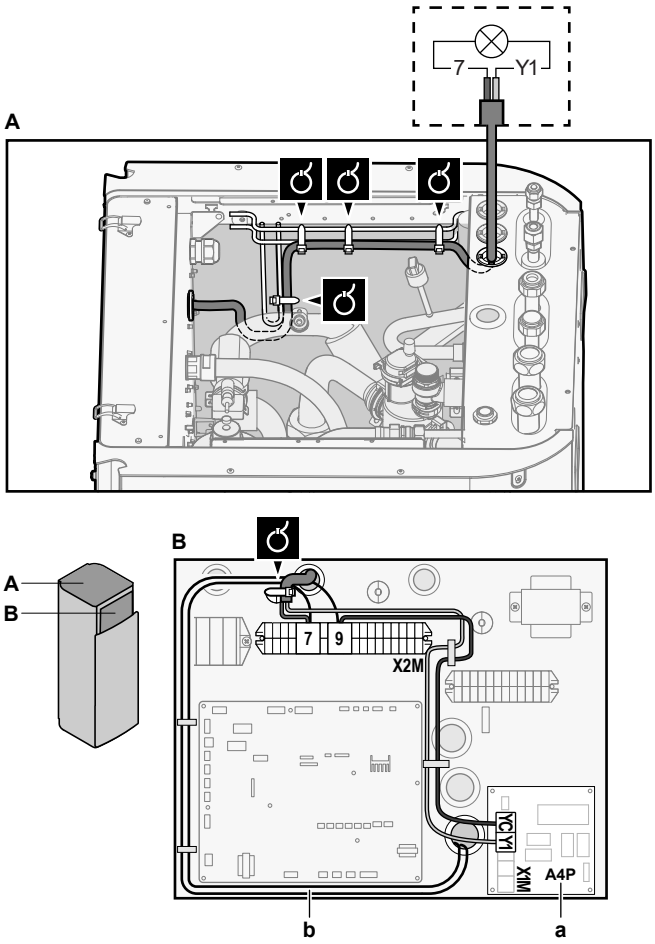
1	Top panel
2	User interface panel
3	Upper switch box cover



2 Connect the alarm output cable to the appropriate terminals as shown in the illustration below.



1+2	Wires connected to the alarm output
3	Wire between X2M and A4P
A4P	Installation of EKRP1HBAA is required.



a Installation of EKRP1HBAA is required.
b Prewiring between X2M/7+9 and Q1L (= thermal protector backup heater). Do NOT change.

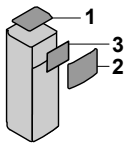
3 Fix the cable with cable ties to the cable tie mountings.

9.3.7 To connect the space cooling/heating ON/OFF output

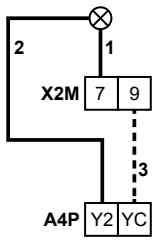
	Wires: (2+1)×0.75 mm² Maximum load: 0.3 A, 250 V AC
	—

1 Open the following (see "7.2.4 To open the indoor unit" [▸ 61]):

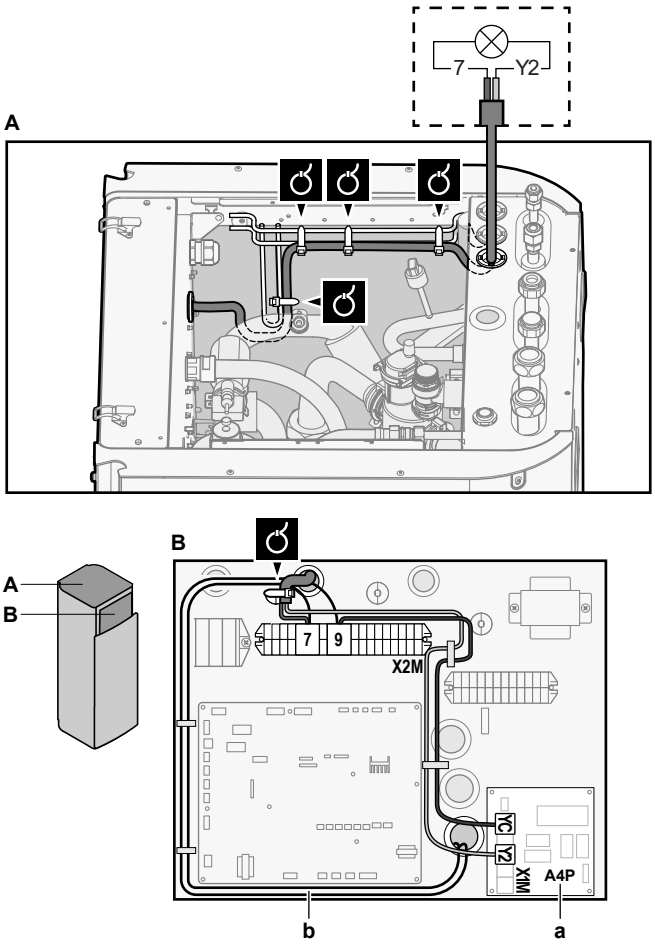
1	Top panel
2	User interface panel
3	Upper switch box cover



2 Connect the space cooling/heating ON/OFF output cable to the appropriate terminals as shown in the illustration below.



1+2	Wires connected to the space cooling/heating ON/OFF output
3	Wire between X2M and A4P
A4P	Installation of EKRP1HBAA is required.



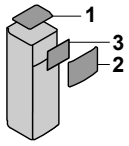
a Installation of EKRP1HBAA is required.
b Prewiring between X2M/7+9 and Q1L (= thermal protector backup heater). Do NOT change.

3 Fix the cable with cable ties to the cable tie mountings.

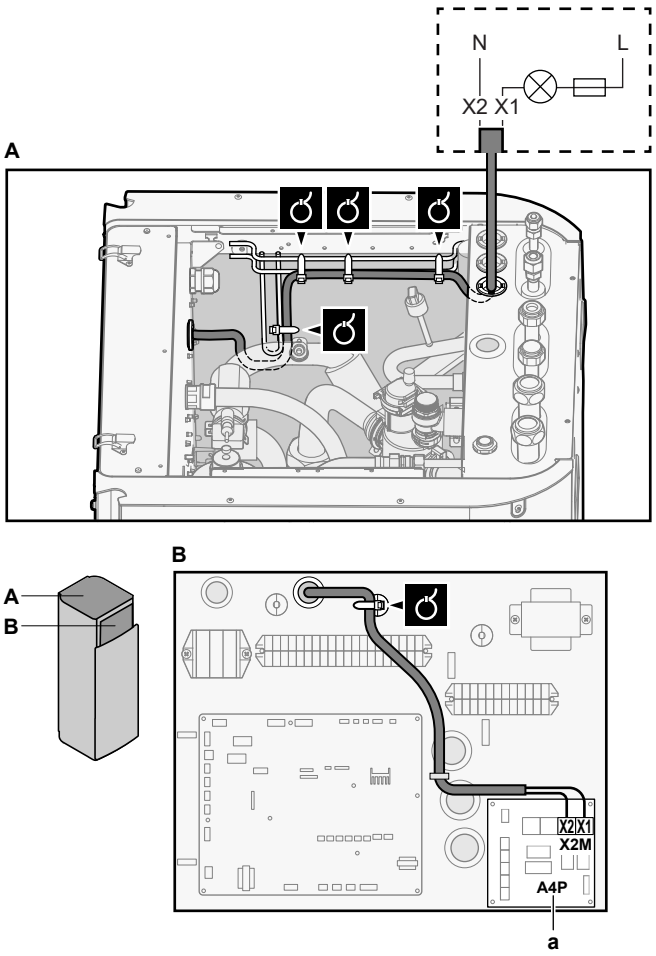
9.3.8 To connect the changeover to external heat source

	Wires: 2×0.75 mm² Maximum load: 0.3 A, 250 V AC Minimum load: 20 mA, 5 V DC
	[9.C] `Bivalent`

1 Open the following (see "7.2.4 To open the indoor unit" [▸ 61]):

1	Top panel	
2	User interface panel	
3	Upper switch box cover	

2 Connect the changeover to external heat source cable to the appropriate terminals as shown in the illustration below.



a Installation of EKRP1HBAA is required.

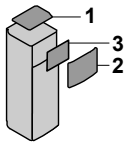
3 Fix the cable with cable ties to the cable tie mountings.

9.3.9 To connect the power consumption digital inputs

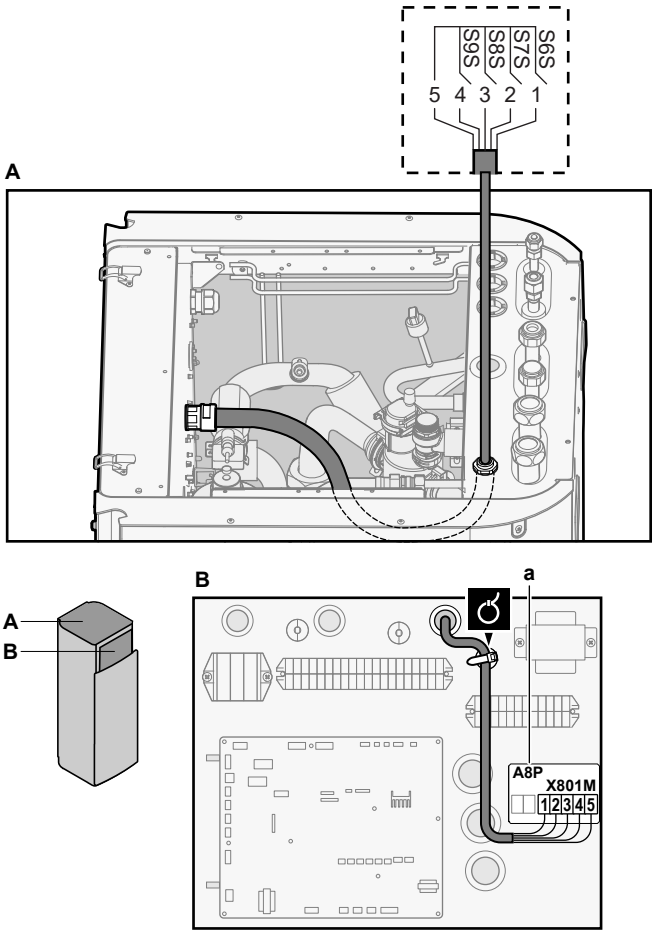
	Wires: 2 (per input signal)×0.75 mm² Power limitation digital inputs: 12 V DC / 12 mA detection (voltage supplied by PCB)
	[9.9] `Power consumption control`.

1 Open the following (see "7.2.4 To open the indoor unit" [▶ 61]):

1	Top panel
2	User interface panel
3	Upper switch box cover



2 Connect the power consumption digital inputs cable to the appropriate terminals as shown in the illustration below.



a Installation of EKRP1AHTA is required.

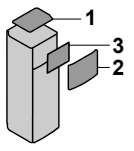
3 Fix the cable with cable ties to the cable tie mountings.

9.3.10 To connect the safety thermostat (normally closed contact)

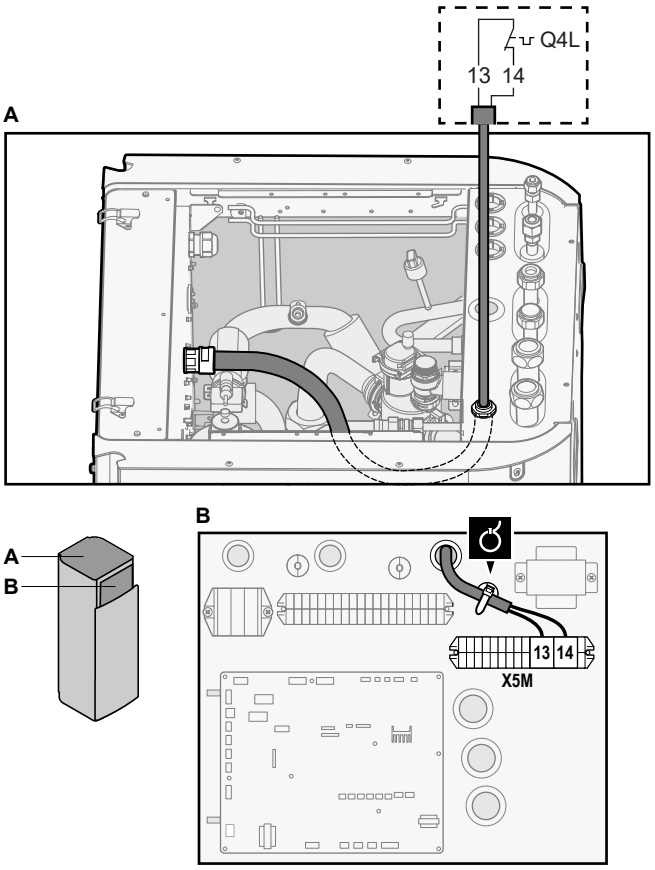
	Wires: 2×0.75 mm² Maximum length: 50 m Safety thermostat contact: 16 V DC detection (voltage supplied by PCB). The voltage-free contact shall ensure the minimum applicable load of 15 V DC, 10 mA.
	[9.8.1]=3 (**Benefit kWh power supply** = **Safety thermostat**)

1 Open the following (see "7.2.4 To open the indoor unit" [▸ 61]):

1	Top panel
2	User interface panel
3	Upper switch box cover



2 Connect the safety thermostat (normally closed) cable to the appropriate terminals as shown in the illustration below.



3 Fix the cable with cable ties to the cable tie mountings.

NOTICE

Make sure to select and install the safety thermostat according to the applicable legislation.

In any case, to prevent unnecessary tripping of the safety thermostat, we recommend the following:

- The safety thermostat is automatically resettable.
- The safety thermostat has a maximum temperature variation rate of 2°C/min.
- There is a minimum distance of 2 m between the safety thermostat and the 3-way valve.

INFORMATION

ALWAYS configure the safety thermostat after it is installed. Without configuration, the unit will ignore the safety thermostat contact.

INFORMATION

The preferential kWh rate power supply contact is connected to the same terminals (X5M/13+14) as the safety thermostat for the additional zone. It is only possible for the system to have EITHER preferential kWh rate power supply OR a safety thermostat for the additional zone.

9.3.11 To connect a Smart Grid

This topic describes 2 possible ways to connect the outdoor unit to a Smart Grid:

- In case of low voltage Smart Grid contacts

- In case of high voltage Smart Grid contacts (this requires the installation of the Smart Grid relay kit EKRELSG).

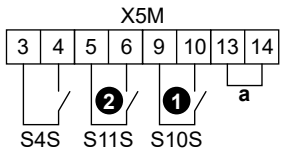
The 2 incoming Smart Grid contacts can activate the following Smart Grid modes:

Smart Grid contact		Smart Grid operation mode
❶	❷	
0	0	0 (free running)
0	1	1 (forced OFF)
1	0	2 (recommended ON)
1	1	3 (forced ON)

In case of low voltage Smart Grid contacts

	Wires (Smart Grid pulse meter): 0.5 mm² Wires (low voltage Smart Grid contacts): 0.5 mm²
	[9.8.4]=3 (**Benefit kWh power supply** = **Smart grid**) [9.8.5] **Smart grid operation mode** [9.8.6] **Allow electrical heaters** [9.8.7] **Enable room buffering** [9.8.8] **Limit setting kw**

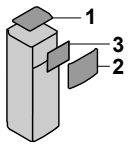
The wiring of the Smart Grid in case of low voltage contacts is as follows:



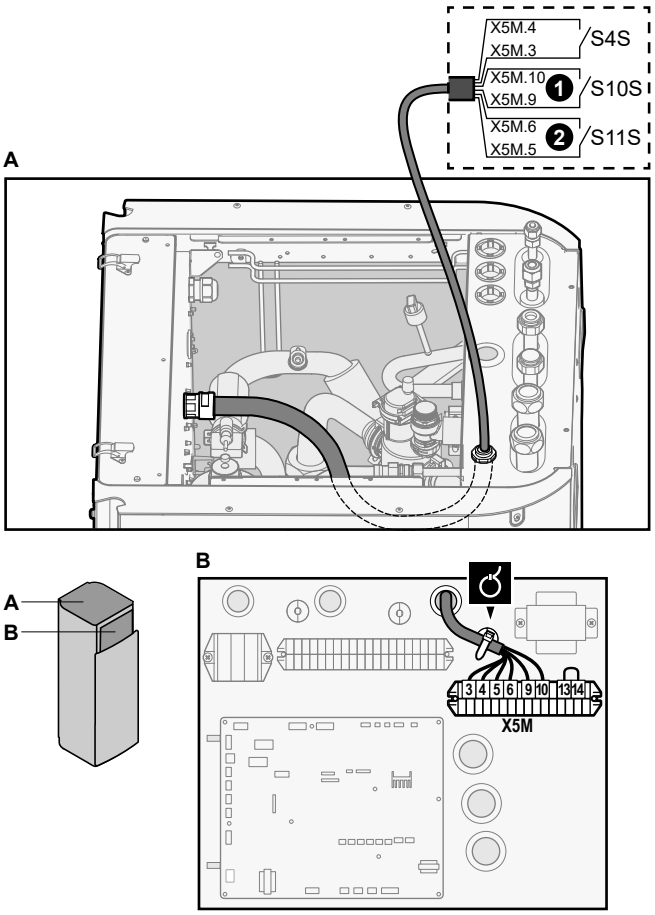
a Jumper (factory-mounted). If you also connect a safety thermostat (Q4L), replace the jumper with the safety thermostat wires.
S4S Smart Grid pulse meter
❶/**S10S** Low voltage Smart Grid contact 1
❷/**S11S** Low voltage Smart Grid contact 2

1 Open the following (see "7.2.4 To open the indoor unit" [▸ 61]):

1	Top panel
2	User interface panel
3	Upper switch box cover



2 Connect the wiring as follows:

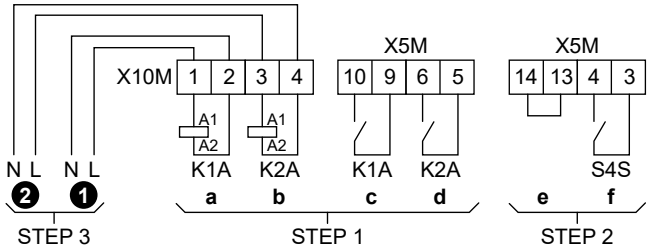


3 Fix the cables with cable ties to the cable tie mountings.

In case of high voltage Smart Grid contacts

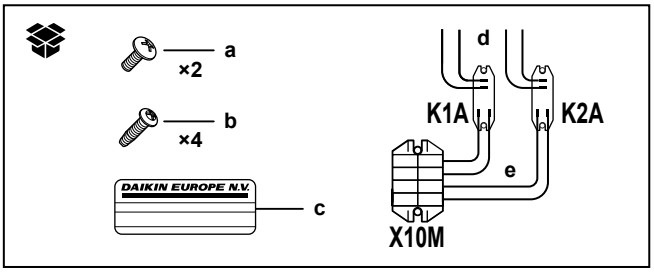
	Wires (Smart Grid pulse meter): 0.5 mm² Wires (high voltage Smart Grid contacts): 1 mm²
	[9.8.4]=3 (`Benefit kWh power supply` = `Smart grid`) [9.8.5] `Smart grid operation mode` [9.8.6] `Allow electrical heaters` [9.8.7] `Enable room buffering` [9.8.8] `Limit setting kw`

The wiring of the Smart Grid in case of high voltage contacts is as follows:

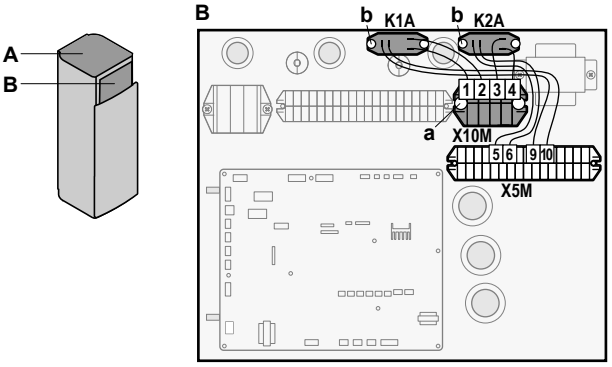


STEP 1 Smart Grid relay kit installation
STEP 2 Low voltage connections
STEP 3 High voltage connections
❶ High voltage Smart Grid contact 1
❷ High voltage Smart Grid contact 2
a, b Coil sides of relays
c, d Contact sides of relays
e Jumper (factory-mounted). If you also connect a safety thermostat (Q4L), replace the jumper with the safety thermostat wires.
f Smart Grid pulse meter

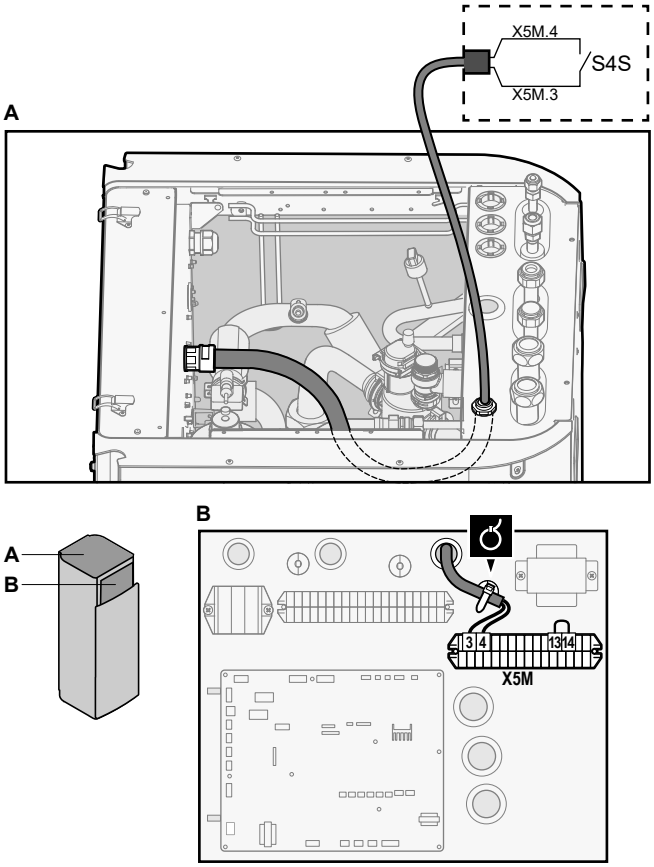
1 Install the components of the Smart Grid relay kit as follows:



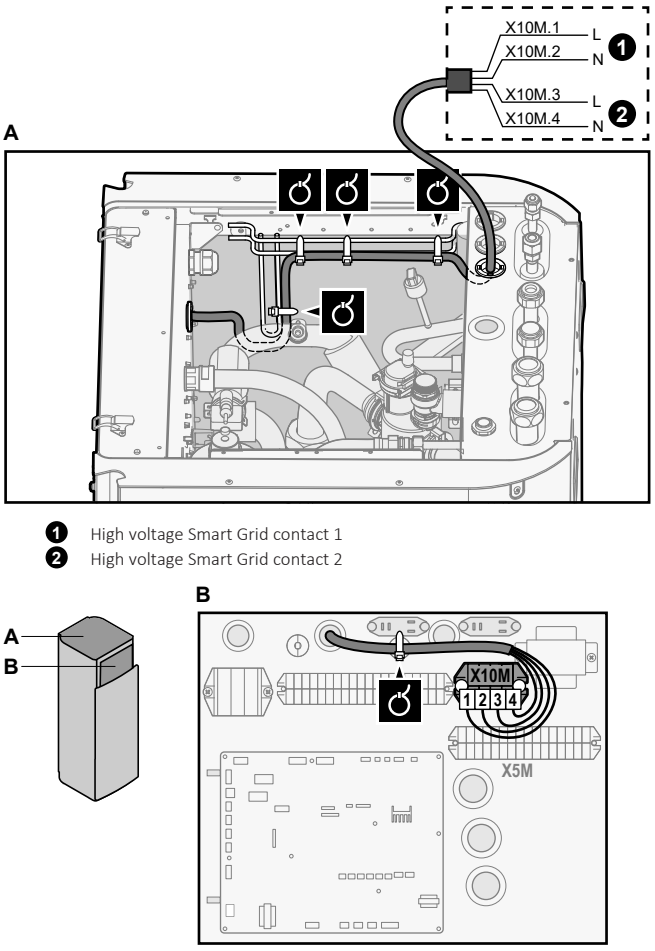
K1A, K2A	Relays
X10M	Terminal block
a	Screws for X10M
b	Screws for K1A and K2A
c	Sticker to put on the high voltage wires
d	Wires between the relays and X5M (AWG22 ORG)
e	Wires between the relays and X10M (AWG18 RED)



2 Connect the low voltage wiring as follows:



3 Connect the high voltage wiring as follows:

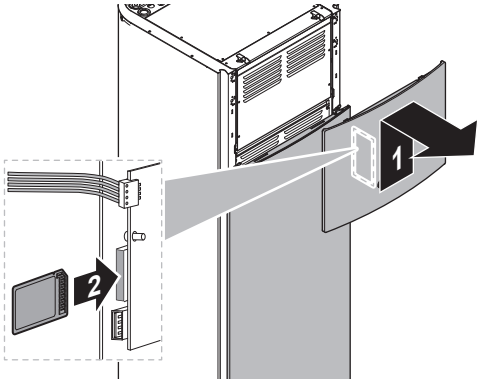


1 High voltage Smart Grid contact 1
2 High voltage Smart Grid contact 2

4 Fix the cables with cable ties to the cable tie mountings. If necessary, bundle excessive cable length with a cable tie.

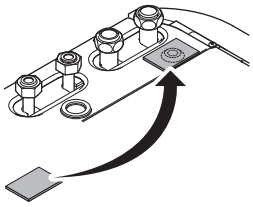
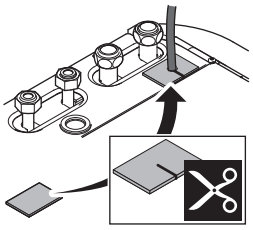
9.3.12 To connect the WLAN cartridge (delivered as accessory)

1 Insert the WLAN cartridge into the cartridge slot on the user interface of the indoor unit.



9.4 After connecting the electrical wiring to the indoor unit

To prevent water ingress to the switch box, seal the low voltage wiring intake using the sealing tape (delivered as accessory).

Without low voltage cables	With low voltage cables
	

10 Configuration

In this chapter

10.1 Overview: Configuration

This chapter describes what you have to do and know to configure the system after it is installed.

Why

If you do NOT configure the system correctly, it might NOT work as expected. The configuration influences the following:

- The calculations of the software
- What you can see on and do with the user interface

How

You can configure the system via the user interface.

- **First time – Configuration wizard.** When you turn ON the user interface for the first time (via the unit), the configuration wizard starts to help you configure the system.
- **Restart the configuration wizard.** If the system is already configured, you can restart the configuration wizard. To restart the configuration wizard, go to `Installer settings` > `Configuration wizard`. To access `Installer settings`, see "10.1.1 To access the most used commands" [▸ 127].
- **Afterwards.** If necessary, you can make changes to the configuration in the menu structure or the overview settings.

INFORMATION

When the configuration wizard is finished, the user interface will show an overview screen and request to confirm. When confirmed, the system will restart and the home screen will be displayed.

Accessing settings – Legend for tables

You can access the installer settings using two different methods. However, NOT all settings are accessible via both methods. If so, the corresponding table columns in this chapter are set to N/A (not applicable).

Method	Column in tables
Accessing settings via the breadcrumb in the **home menu screen** or the **menu structure**. To enable breadcrumbs, press the **?** button in the home screen.	**#** For example: [2.9]
Accessing settings via the code in the **overview field settings**.	**Code** For example: [C-07]

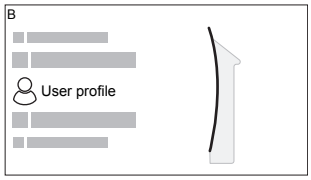
See also:

- "To access the installer settings" [▸ 128]
- "10.7 Menu structure: Overview installer settings" [▸ 206]

10.1.1 To access the most used commands

To change the user permission level

You can change the user permission level as follows:

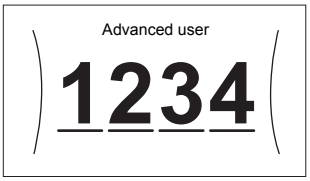
1	Go to [B]: `User profile`. 	
2	Enter the applicable pin code for the user permission level.	—
	▪ Browse through the list of digits and change the selected digit.	
	▪ Move the cursor from left to right.	
	▪ Confirm the pin code and proceed.	

Installer pin code

The `Installer` pin code is **5678**. Additional menu items and installer settings are now available.

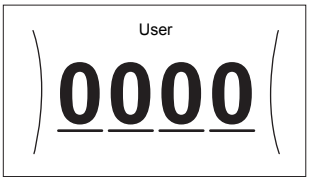
Advanced user pin code

The `Advanced user` pin code is **1234**. Additional menu items for the user are now visible.



User pin code

The `User` pin code is **0000**.



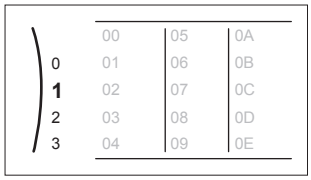
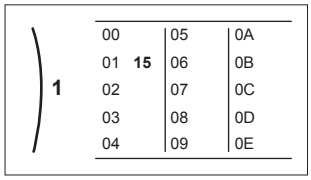
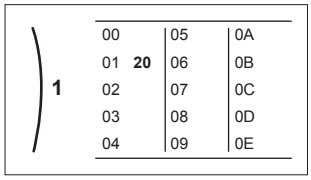
To access the installer settings

1. Set the user permission level to `Installer`.
2. Go to [9]: `Installer settings`.

To modify an overview setting

Example: Modify [1-01] from 15 to 20.

Most settings can be configured via the menu structure. If for any reason it is required to change a setting using the overview settings, then the overview settings can be accessed as follows:

1	Set the user permission level to `Installer`. See "To change the user permission level" [▶ 127].	—
2	Go to [9.I]: `Installer settings` > `Overview field settings`.	
3	Turn the left dial to select the first part of the setting and confirm by pressing the dial. 	
4	Turn the left dial to select the second part of the setting 	
5	Turn the right dial to modify the value from 15 to 20. 	
6	Press the left dial to confirm the new setting.	
7	Press the center button to go back to the home screen.	

INFORMATION

When you change the overview settings and you go back to the home screen, the user interface will show a popup screen and request to restart the system.

When confirmed, the system will restart and recent changes will be applied.

10.2 Configuration wizard

After first power ON of the system, the user interface will guide you using the configuration wizard. This way you can set the most important initial settings. This way the unit will be able to run properly. Afterwards, more detailed settings can be done via the menu structure if required.

You can find a short overview of the settings in the configuration here. All the settings can also be adjusted in the settings menu (use the breadcrumbs).

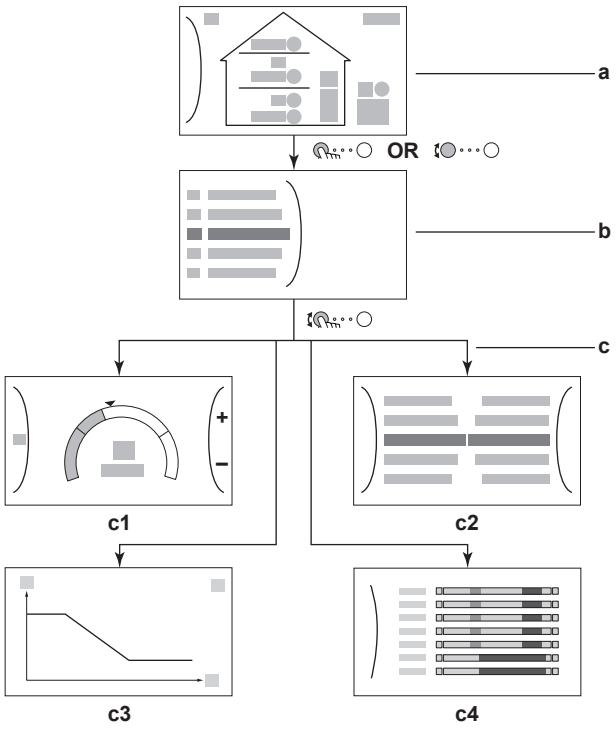
For the setting...		Refer to...
Language [7.1]		
Time/date [7.2]		
	Hours	—
	Minutes	
	Year	
	Month	
	Day	
System		
	Indoor unit type (read only)	"10.5.9 Installer settings" [▶ 187]
	Backup heater type [9.3.1]	
	Domestic hot water [9.2.1]	
	Emergency [9.5.1]	
	Number of zones [4.4]	"10.5.5 Space heating/ cooling" [▶ 166]
Backup heater		
	Voltage [9.3.2]	" Backup heater" [▶ 188]
	Configuration [9.3.3]	
	Capacity step 1 [9.3.4]	
	Additional capacity step 2 [9.3.5] (if applicable)	
Main zone		

For the setting...		Refer to...
	Emitter type [2.7]	"10.5.3 Main zone" [▶ 150]
	Control [2.9]	
	Setpoint mode [2.4]	
	Heating WD curve [2.5] (if applicable)	
	Cooling WD curve [2.6] (if applicable)	
	Schedule [2.1]	
Additional zone (only if [4.4]=1)		
	Emitter type [3.7]	"10.5.4 Additional zone" [▶ 160]
	Control (read only) [3.9]	
	Setpoint mode [3.4]	
	Heating WD curve [3.5] (if applicable)	
	Cooling WD curve [3.6] (if applicable)	
	Schedule [3.1]	
Tank		
	Heat up mode [5.6]	"10.5.6 Tank" [▶ 174]
	Comfort setpoint [5.2]	
	Eco setpoint [5.3]	
	Reheat setpoint [5.4]	

10.3 Possible screens

10.3.1 Possible screens: Overview

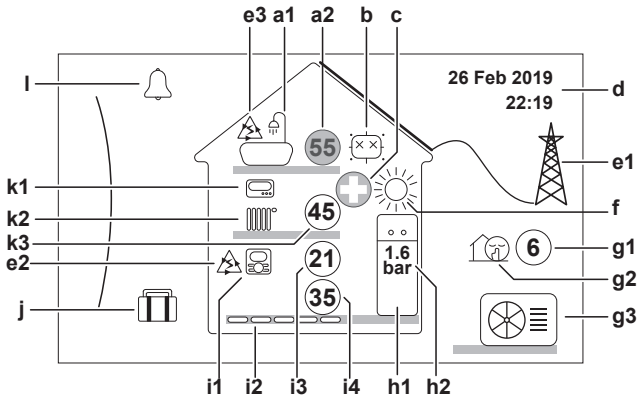
The most common screens are as follows:



a Home screen
b Main menu screen
c Lower level screens:
c1: Setpoint screen
c2: Detailed screen with values
c3: Screen with weather-dependent curve
c4: Screen with schedule

10.3.2 Home screen

Press the ⌂ button to go back to the home screen. You see an overview of the unit configuration and the room and setpoint temperatures. Only symbols applicable for your configuration are visible on the home screen.



Possible actions on this screen	
⊙···○	Go through the list of the main menu.
⊙···○	Go to the main menu screen.
?	Enable/disable breadcrumbs.

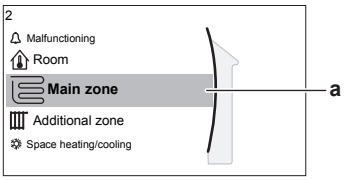
Item			Description
a	**Domestic hot water**		
	a1		Domestic hot water
	a2		Measured tank temperature[(a)]
b	**Disinfection / Powerful**		
			Disinfection mode active
			Powerful operation mode active
c	**Emergency**		
			Heat pump failure and system operates in `Emergency` mode or heat pump is forced off.
d	**Current date and time**		
e	**Smart energy**		
	e1		Smart energy is available via solar panels or smart grid.
	e2		Smart energy is currently being used for space heating.
	e3		Smart energy is currently being used for domestic hot water.
f	**Space operation mode**		
			Cooling
			Heating
g	**Outdoor / quiet mode**		
	g1		Measured outdoor temperature[(a)]
	g2		Quiet mode active
	g3		Outdoor unit
h	**Indoor unit / domestic hot water tank**		
	h1		Floor-standing indoor unit with integrated tank
			Wall-mounted indoor unit
			Wall-mounted indoor unit with separated tank
	h2	1.6 bar	Water pressure

Item			Description
i	**Main zone**		
	i1	Installed room thermostat type:	
			Unit operation is decided based on the ambient temperature of the dedicated Human Comfort Interface (BRC1HHDA used as room thermostat).
			Unit operation is decided by the external room thermostat (wired or wireless).
		—	No room thermostat installed or set. Unit operation is decided based on the leaving water temperature regardless of the actual room temperature and/or heating demand of the room.
	i2	Installed heat emitter type:	
			`Underfloor heating`
			`Fancoil unit`
			`Radiator`
	i3		Measured room temperature[a]
	i4		Leaving water temperature setpoint[a]
j	**Holiday mode**		
			Holiday mode active
k	**Additional zone**		
	k1	Installed room thermostat type:	
			Unit operation is decided by the external room thermostat (wired or wireless).
		—	No room thermostat installed or set. Unit operation is decided based on the leaving water temperature regardless of the actual room temperature and/or heating demand of the room.
	k2	Installed heat emitter type:	
			`Underfloor heating`
			`Fancoil unit`
			`Radiator`
	k3		Leaving water temperature setpoint[a]
l	**Malfunction**		
			A malfunction occurred.
			See "14.4.1 To display the help text in case of a malfunction" [▸ 231] for more information.

[a] If the corresponding operation (for example: space heating) is not active, the circle is greyed out.

10.3.3 Main menu screen

Starting from the home screen, press ( ) or turn ( ) the left dial to open the main menu screen. From the main menu, you can access the different setpoint screens and submenus.



a Selected submenu

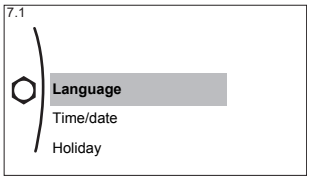
Possible actions on this screen	
	Go through the list.
	Enter the submenu.
?	Enable/disable breadcrumbs.

Submenu		Description
[0]	or Malfunctioning	**Restriction:** Only displayed if a malfunction occurs. See "14.4.1 To display the help text in case of a malfunction" [▶ 231] for more information.
[1]	Room	**Restriction:** Only displayed if a dedicated Human Comfort Interface (BRC1HHDA used as room thermostat) is controlling the indoor unit. Set the room temperature.
[2]	Main zone	Shows the applicable symbol for your main zone emitter type. Set the leaving water temperature for the main zone.
[3]	Additional zone	**Restriction:** Only displayed if there are two leaving water temperature zones. Shows the applicable symbol for your additional zone emitter type. Set the leaving water temperature for the additional zone (if present).
[4]	Space heating/ cooling	Shows the applicable symbol of your unit. Put the unit in heating mode or cooling mode. You cannot change the mode on heating only models.
[5]	Tank	Set the domestic hot water tank temperature.
[7]	User settings	Gives access to user settings such as holiday mode and quiet mode.
[8]	Information	Displays data and information about the indoor unit.
[9]	Installer settings	**Restriction:** Only for the installer. Gives access to advanced settings.

Submenu		Description
[A]	Commissioning	**Restriction:** Only for the installer. Perform tests and maintenance.
[B]	User profile	Change the active user profile.
[C]	Operation	Turn heating/cooling functionality and domestic hot water preparation on or off.
[D]	Wireless gateway	**Restriction:** Only displayed if a wireless LAN (WLAN) is installed. Contains settings needed when configuring the Daikin Residential Controller app.

10.3.4 Menu screen

Example:



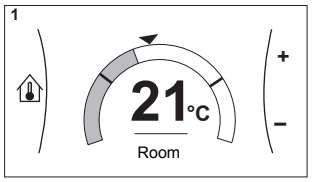
Possible actions on this screen	
	Go through the list.
	Enter the submenu/setting.

10.3.5 Setpoint screen

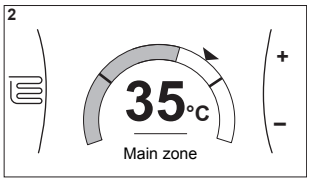
The setpoint screen is displayed for screens describing system components that need a setpoint value.

Examples

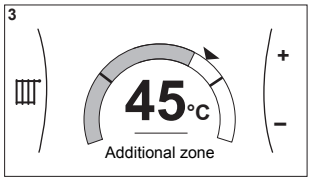
[1] Room temperature screen



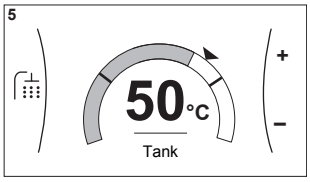
[2] Main zone screen



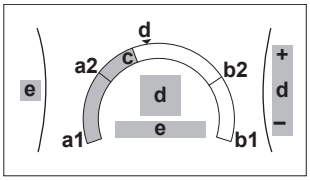
[3] Additional zone screen



[5] Tank temperature screen



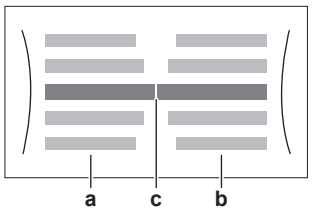
Explanation



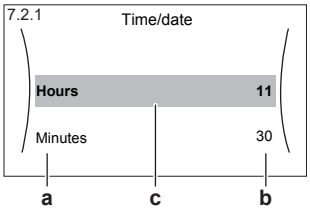
Possible actions on this screen	
	Go through the list of the submenu.
	Go to the submenu.
	Adjust and automatically apply the desired temperature.

Item	Description	
Minimum temperature limit	**a1**	Fixed by the unit
	a2	Restricted by the installer
Maximum temperature limit	**b1**	Fixed by the unit
	b2	Restricted by the installer
Current temperature	**c**	Measured by the unit
Desired temperature	**d**	Turn the right dial to increase/ decrease.
Submenu	**e**	Turn or press the left dial to go to the submenu.

10.3.6 Detailed screen with values



Example:



a	Settings
b	Values
c	Selected setting and value

Possible actions on this screen	
	Go through the list of settings.
	Change the value.
	Go to the next setting.
	Confirm changes and proceed.

10.3.7 Schedule screen: Example

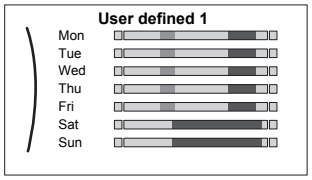
This example shows how to set a room temperature schedule in heating mode for the main zone.

INFORMATION

The procedures to program other schedules are similar.

To program the schedule: overview

Example: You want to program the following schedule:



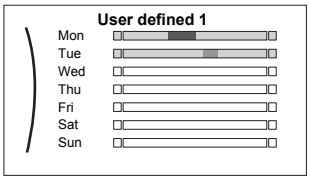
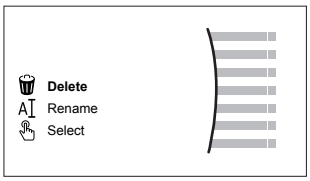
Prerequisite: The room temperature schedule is only available if room thermostat control is active. If leaving water temperature control is active, you can program the main zone schedule instead.

1. Go to the schedule.
2. (optional) Clear the content of the whole week schedule or the content of a selected day schedule.
3. Program the schedule for `Monday`.
4. Copy the schedule to the other weekdays.
5. Program the schedule for `Saturday` and copy it to `Sunday`.
6. Give the schedule a name.

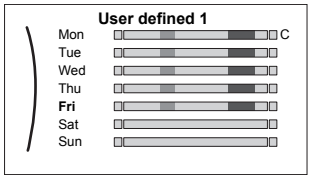
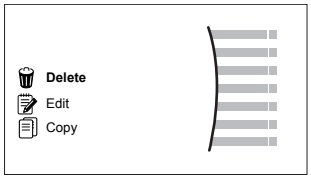
To go to the schedule

1	Go to [1.1]: `Room` > `Schedule`.	
2	Set scheduling to `Yes`.	
3	Go to [1.2]: `Room` > `Heating schedule`.	

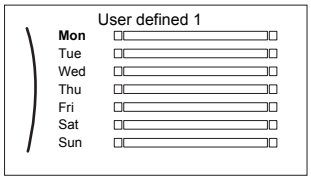
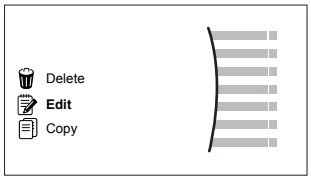
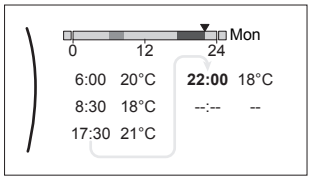
To clear the content of the week schedule

1	Select the name of the current schedule. 	
2	Select `Delete`. 	
3	Select `OK` to confirm.	

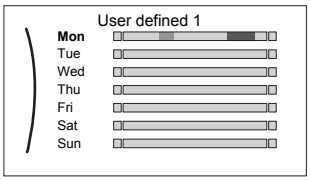
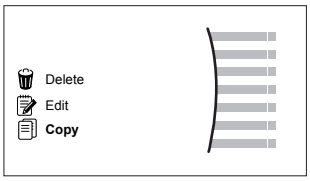
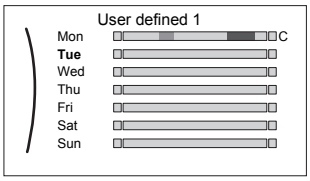
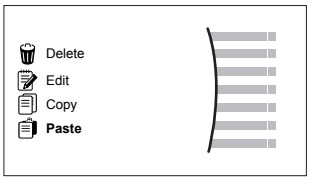
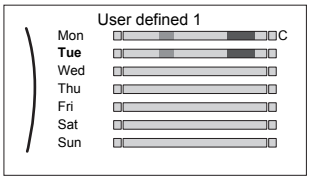
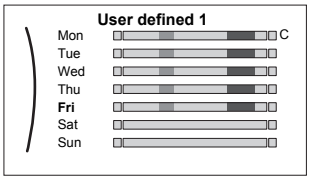
To clear the content of a day schedule

1	Select the day of which you want to clear the content. For example `Friday` 	
2	Select `Delete`. 	
3	Select `OK` to confirm.	

To program the schedule for Monday

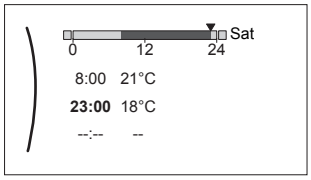
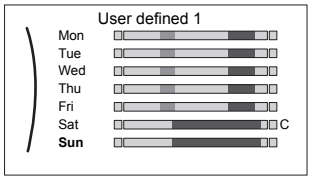
1	Select `Monday`. 	
2	Select `Edit`. 	
3	Use the left dial to select an entry and edit the entry with the right dial. You can program up to 6 actions each day. On the bar, a high temperature has a darker colour than a low temperature.  **Note:** To clear an action, set its time as the time of the previous action.	
4	Confirm the changes. **Result:** The schedule for Monday is defined. The value of the last action is valid until the next programmed action. In this example, Monday is the first day you programmed. Thus, the last programmed action is valid up to the first action of next Monday.	

To copy the schedule to the other weekdays

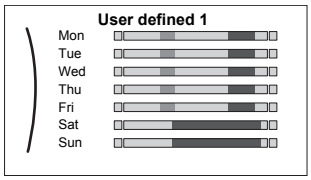
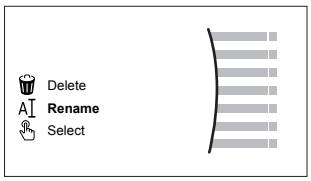
1	Select **Monday**. 	
2	Select **Copy**.  **Result:** Next to the copied day, "C" is displayed.	
3	Select **Tuesday**. 	
4	Select **Paste**.  **Result:** 	
5	Repeat this action for all other weekdays. 	—

To program the schedule for Saturday and copy it to Sunday

1	Select **Saturday**.	
2	Select **Edit**.	

3	Use the left dial to select an entry and edit the entry with the right dial. 	
4	Confirm the changes.	
5	Select `Saturday`.	
6	Select `Copy`.	
7	Select `Sunday`.	
8	Select `Paste`. **Result:** 	

To rename the schedule

1	Select the name of the current schedule. 	
2	Select `Rename`. 	
3	(optional) To delete the current schedule name, browse through the character list until ← is displayed, then press to remove the previous character. Repeat for each character of the schedule name.	
4	To name the current schedule, browse through the character list and confirm the selected character. The schedule name can contain up to 15 characters.	
5	Confirm the new name.	

INFORMATION

Not all schedules can be renamed.

10.4 Weather-dependent curve

10.4.1 What is a weather-dependent curve?

Weather-dependent operation

The unit operates 'weather dependent' if the desired leaving water or tank temperature is determined automatically by the outdoor temperature. It therefore is connected to a temperature sensor on the North wall of the building. If the outdoor temperature drops or rises, the unit compensates instantly. Thus, the unit does not have to wait for feedback by the thermostat to increase or decrease the temperature of the leaving water or tank. Because it reacts more quickly, it prevents high rises and drops of the indoor temperature and water temperature at tap points.

Advantage

Weather-dependent operation reduces energy consumption.

Weather-dependent curve

To be able to compensate for differences in temperature, the unit relies on its weather-dependent curve. This curve defines how much the temperature of the tank or leaving water must be at different outdoor temperatures. Because the slope of the curve depends on local circumstances such as climate and the insulation of the house, the curve can be adjusted by an installer or user.

Types of weather-dependent curve

There are 2 types of weather-dependent curves:

- 2-points curve
- Slope-offset curve

Which type of curve you use to make adjustments, depends on your personal preference. See "10.4.4 Using weather-dependent curves" [▸ 144].

Availability

The weather-dependent curve is available for:

- Main zone - Heating
- Main zone - Cooling
- Additional zone - Heating
- Additional zone - Cooling
- Tank (only available to installers)

INFORMATION

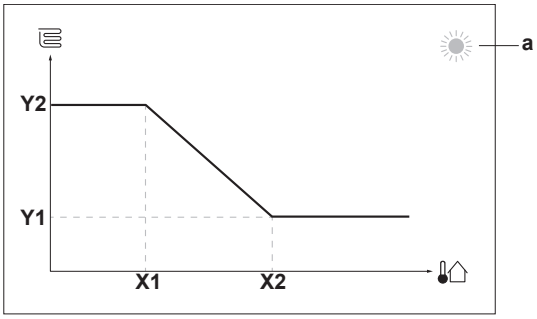
To operate weather dependent, correctly configure the setpoint of the main zone, additional zone or tank. See "10.4.4 Using weather-dependent curves" [▸ 144].

10.4.2 2-points curve

Define the weather-dependent curve with these two setpoints:

- Setpoint (X1, Y2)
- Setpoint (X2, Y1)

Example



Item	Description
a	Selected weather dependent zone: ▪ : Main zone or additional zone heating ▪ : Main zone or additional zone cooling ▪ : Domestic hot water
X1, X2	Examples of outdoor ambient temperature
Y1, Y2	Examples of desired tank temperature or leaving water temperature. The icon corresponds to the heat emitter for that zone: ▪ : Underfloor heating ▪ : Fan coil unit ▪ : Radiator ▪ : Domestic hot water tank

Possible actions on this screen	
	Go through the temperatures.
	Change the temperature.
	Go to the next temperature.
	Confirm changes and proceed.

10.4.3 Slope-offset curve

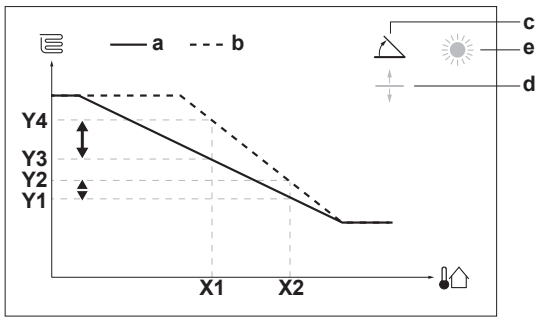
Slope and offset

Define the weather-dependent curve by its slope and offset:

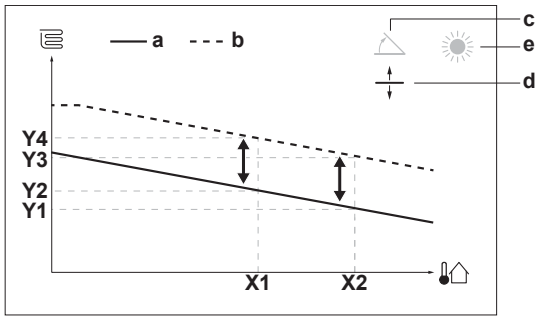
- Change the **slope** to differently increase or decrease the temperature of the leaving water for different ambient temperatures. For example, if leaving water temperature is in general fine but at low ambient temperatures too cold, raise the slope so that leaving water temperature is heated increasingly more at decreasingly lower ambient temperatures.
- Change the **offset** to equally increase or decrease the temperature of the leaving water for different ambient temperatures. For example, if leaving water temperature is always a bit too cold at different ambient temperatures, shift the offset up to equally increase the leaving water temperature for all ambient temperatures.

Examples

Weather-dependent curve when slope is selected:



Weather-dependent curve when offset is selected:



Item	Description
a	WD curve before changes.
b	WD curve after changes (as example): ▪ When slope is changed, the new preferred temperature at X1 is unequally higher than the preferred temperature at X2. ▪ When offset is changed, the new preferred temperature at X1 is equally higher as the preferred temperature at X2.
c	Slope
d	Offset
e	Selected weather dependent zone: ▪ : Main zone or additional zone heating ▪ : Main zone or additional zone cooling ▪ : Domestic hot water
X1, X2	Examples of outdoor ambient temperature
Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4	Examples of desired tank temperature or leaving water temperature. The icon corresponds to the heat emitter for that zone: ▪ : Underfloor heating ▪ : Fan coil unit ▪ : Radiator ▪ : Domestic hot water tank

Possible actions on this screen	
	Select slope or offset.
	Increase or decrease the slope/offset.
	When slope is selected: set slope and go to offset. When offset is selected: set offset.
	Confirm changes and return to the submenu.

10.4.4 Using weather-dependent curves

Configure weather-dependent curves as following:

To define the setpoint mode

To use the weather-dependent curve, you need to define the correct setpoint mode:

Go to setpoint mode …	Set the setpoint mode to …
Main zone – Heating	
[2.4] `Main zone` > `Setpoint mode`	`WD heating, fixed cooling` OR `Weather dependent`
Main zone – Cooling	
[2.4] `Main zone` > `Setpoint mode`	`Weather dependent`
Additional zone – Heating	
[3.4] `Additional zone` > `Setpoint mode`	`WD heating, fixed cooling` OR `Weather dependent`
Additional zone – Cooling	
[3.4] `Additional zone` > `Setpoint mode`	`Weather dependent`
Tank	
[5.B] `Tank` > `Setpoint mode`	**Restriction:** Only available to installers. `Weather dependent`

To change the type of weather-dependent curve

To change the type for all zones (main + additional) and for the tank, go to [2.E] `Main zone` > `WD curve type`.

Viewing which type is selected is also possible via:

- [3.C] `Additional zone` > `WD curve type`
- [5.E] `Tank` > `WD curve type`
  Restriction: Only available to installers.

To change the weather-dependent curve

Zone	Go to …
Main zone – Heating	[2.5] `Main zone` > `Heating WD curve`
Main zone – Cooling	[2.6] `Main zone` > `Cooling WD curve`
Additional zone – Heating	[3.5] `Additional zone` > `Heating WD curve`

Zone	Go to ...
Additional zone – Cooling	[3.6] `Additional zone` > `Cooling WD curve`
Tank	**Restriction:** Only available to installers. [5.C] `Tank` > `WD curve`

INFORMATION

Maximum and minimum setpoints

You cannot configure the curve with temperatures that are higher or lower than the set maximum and minimum setpoints for that zone or for the tank. When the maximum or minimum setpoint is reached, the curve flattens out.

To fine-tune the weather-dependent curve: slope-offset curve

The following table describes how to fine-tune the weather-dependent curve of a zone or tank:

You feel ...		Fine-tune with slope and offset:	
At regular outdoor temperatures ...	**At cold outdoor temperatures ...**	**Slope**	**Offset**
OK	Cold	↑	—
OK	Hot	↓	—
Cold	OK	↓	↑
Cold	Cold	—	↑
Cold	Hot	↓	↑
Hot	OK	↑	↓
Hot	Cold	↑	↓
Hot	Hot	—	↓

To fine-tune the weather-dependent curve: 2-points curve

The following table describes how to fine-tune the weather-dependent curve of a zone or tank:

You feel ...		Fine-tune with setpoints:			
At regular outdoor temperatures ...	**At cold outdoor temperatures ...**	**Y2[(a)]**	**Y1[(a)]**	**X1[(a)]**	**X2[(a)]**
OK	Cold	↑	—	↑	—
OK	Hot	↓	—	↓	—
Cold	OK	—	↑	—	↑
Cold	Cold	↑	↑	↑	↑
Cold	Hot	↓	↑	↓	↑
Hot	OK	—	↓	—	↓
Hot	Cold	↑	↓	↑	↓
Hot	Hot	↓	↓	↓	↓

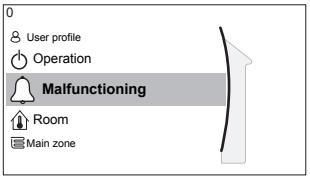
[(a)] See "10.4.2 2-points curve" [▶ 141].

10.5 Settings menu

You can set additional settings using the main menu screen and its submenus. The most important settings are presented here.

10.5.1 Malfunctioning

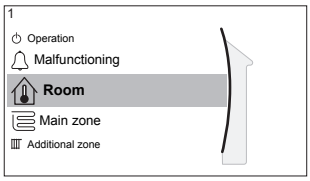
In case of a malfunction, 🔔 or ⚠ will appear on the home screen. To display the error code, open the menu screen and go to [0] **Malfunctioning**. Press **?** for more information about the error.



10.5.2 Room

Overview

The following items are listed in the submenu:



[1] **Room**

Setpoint screen

[1.1] **Schedule**

[1.2] **Heating schedule**

[1.3] **Cooling schedule**

[1.4] **Antifrost**

[1.5] **Setpoint range**

[1.6] **Room sensor offset**

[1.7] **Room sensor offset**

Setpoint screen

Control the room temperature of the main zone via setpoint screen [1] **Room**.

See "10.3.5 Setpoint screen" [▸ 135].

Schedule

Indicate if the room temperature is controlled according to a schedule or not.

#	Code	Description
[1.1]	N/A	**Schedule**: ▪ **No**: Room temperature is directly controlled by the user. ▪ **Yes**: Room temperature is controlled by a schedule and can be modified by the user.

Heating schedule

Applicable for all models.

Define a heating schedule of the room temperature in [1.2] **Heating schedule** .

See "10.3.7 Schedule screen: Example" [▸ 136].

Cooling schedule

Only applicable for reversible models.

Define a cooling schedule of the room temperature in [1.3] `Cooling schedule`.

See "10.3.7 Schedule screen: Example" [▸ 136].

Antifrost

Room frost protection [1.4] prevents the room from getting too cold. This setting behaves differently depending on the set unit control method [2.9]. Perform actions according to the table below.

Main zone unit control method [2.9]	Description
Leaving water temperature control ([C-07]=0)	Room frost protection is NOT guaranteed.
External room thermostat control ([C-07]=1)	Allow for the external room thermostat to take care of room frost protection: ▪ Set [C.2] `Space heating/cooling`=`On`.
Room thermostat control ([C-07]=2)	Allow for the user interface used as room thermostat to take care of room frost protection: ▪ Set antifrost [1.4.1] `Activation`=`Yes`. ▪ Set the temperature of the antifrost function in [1.4.2] `Room setpoint`.

INFORMATION

If a U4 error occurs, room frost protection is NOT guaranteed.

NOTICE

If the room `Antifrost` setting is active and a U4 error occurs, the unit will automatically start the `Antifrost` function via the backup heater. If the backup heater is not allowed, the room `Antifrost` setting MUST be disabled.

NOTICE

Room frost protection. Even if you turn OFF space heating/cooling operation ([C.2]: `Operation` > `Space heating/cooling`), room frost protection –if enabled– will remain active.

For more detailed information about room frost protection in relation to the applicable unit control method, see the sections below.

Leaving water temperature control ([C-07]=0)

Under leaving water temperature control, room frost protection is NOT guaranteed. However, if room antifrost [1.4] is activated, limited frost protection by the unit is possible:

If...	Then...
`Space heating/cooling` is OFF and the outdoor ambient temperature drops below 4°C	The unit will supply leaving water to the heat emitters to heat up the room again, and the leaving water temperature setpoint will be lowered.

If...	Then...
`Space heating/cooling` is ON and the operation mode is "heating"	The unit will supply leaving water to the heat emitters to heat up the room according to normal logic.
`Space heating/cooling` is ON and the operation mode is "cooling"	There is no room frost protection.

External room thermostat control ([C-07]=1)

Under external room thermostat control, room frost protection is guaranteed by the external room thermostat, provided that:

- [C.2] `Space heating/cooling`=`On`, and
- [9.5.1] `Emergency`=`Automatic` or `auto SH normal/DHW off`.

However, if [1.4.1] `Antifrost` is activated, limited frost protection by the unit is possible.

In case of one leaving water temperature zone:

If...	Then...
`Space heating/cooling` is OFF and the outdoor ambient temperature drops below 4°C	The unit will supply leaving water to the heat emitters to heat up the room again, and the leaving water temperature setpoint will be lowered.
`Space heating/cooling` is ON, the external room thermostat is "Thermo OFF" and the outdoor temperature drops below 4°C	The unit will supply leaving water to the heat emitters to heat up the room again, and the leaving water temperature setpoint will be lowered.
`Space heating/cooling` is ON and the external room thermostat is "Thermo ON"	Room frost protection is guaranteed by the normal logic.

In case of two leaving water temperature zones:

If...	Then...
`Space heating/cooling` is OFF and the outdoor ambient temperature drops below 4°C	The unit will supply leaving water to the heat emitters to heat up the room again, and the leaving water temperature setpoint will be lowered.
`Space heating/cooling` is ON, the external room thermostat is "Thermo OFF", the operation mode is "heating" and the outdoor temperature drops below 4°C	The unit will supply leaving water to the heat emitters to heat up the room again, and the leaving water temperature setpoint will be lowered.
`Space heating/cooling` is ON and the operation mode is "cooling"	There is no room frost protection.

Room thermostat control ([C-07]=2)

During room thermostat control, room frost protection [2-06] is guaranteed when activated. If so, and the room temperature drops below the room antifrost temperature [2-05], the unit will supply leaving water to the heat emitters to heat up the room again.

#	Code	Description
[1.4.1]	[2-06]	`Activation`: ▪ 0 `No`: Antifrost functionality is OFF. ▪ 1 `Yes`: Antifrost functionality is on.
[1.4.2]	[2-05]	`Room setpoint`: ▪ 4°C~16°C

INFORMATION

When the user interface used as room thermostat is disconnected (because of incorrect wiring or damage of the cable), then room frost protection is NOT guaranteed.

NOTICE

If `Emergency` is set to `Manual` ([9.5.1]=0), and the unit is triggered to start emergency operation, the unit will stop and needs to be recovered manually via the user interface. To recover operation manually, go to the `Malfunctioning` main menu screen, and confirm emergency operation before starting.

Room frost protection is active even if the user does not confirm emergency operation.

Setpoint range

Only applicable in room thermostat control.

To save energy by preventing overheating or undercooling the room, you can limit the range of the room temperature for heating and/or cooling.

NOTICE

When adjusting the room temperature ranges, all desired room temperatures are also adjusted to guarantee they are between the limits.

#	Code	Description
[1.5.1]	[3-07]	`Heating minimum`
[1.5.2]	[3-06]	`Heating maximum`
[1.5.3]	[3-09]	`Cooling minimum`
[1.5.4]	[3-08]	`Cooling maximum`

Room sensor offset

Only applicable in room thermostat control.

To calibrate the (external) room temperature sensor, give an offset to the value of the room thermistor as measured by the user interface used as room thermostat or by the external room sensor. The setting can be used to compensate for situations where the user interface used as room thermostat or the external room sensor cannot be installed at the ideal location.

See "6.7 Setting up an external temperature sensor" [▸ 52]).

#	Code	Description
[1.6]	[2-0A]	`Room sensor offset` (user interface used as room thermostat): Offset on the actual room temperature measured by the user interface used as room thermostat. ▪ –5°C~5°C, step 0.5°C
[1.7]	[2-09]	`Room sensor offset` (external room sensor option): Only applicable if the external room sensor option is installed and configured. ▪ –5°C~5°C, step 0.5°C

Room comfort setpoint

Restriction: Only applicable if:

- Smart Grid is enabled ([9.8.4]=`Smart grid`), and
- Room buffering is enabled ([9.8.7]=`Yes`)

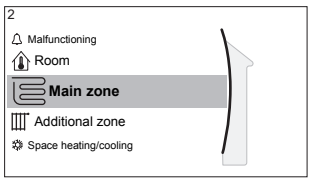
If room buffering is enabled, the extra energy from photovoltaic panels is buffered in the DHW tank and in the space heating circuit (i.e. heat up the room). With the room comfort setpoints (cooling/heating) you can modify the maximum setpoints that will be used when buffering the extra energy in the space heating circuit (i.e. heat up the room).

#	Code	Description
[1.9.1]	[9-0A]	`Heating comfort setpoint` ▪ [3-07]~[3-06]°C
[1.9.2]	[9-0B]	`Cooling comfort setpoint` ▪ [3-09]~[3-08]°C

10.5.3 Main zone

Overview

The following items are listed in the submenu:



[2] `Main zone`

Setpoint screen

[2.1] `Schedule`

[2.2] `Heating schedule`

[2.3] `Cooling schedule`

[2.4] `Setpoint mode`

[2.5] `Heating WD curve`

[2.6] `Cooling WD curve`

[2.7] `Emitter type`

[2.8] `Setpoint range`

[2.9] `Control`

[2.A] `Thermostat type`

[2.B] `Delta T`

[2.C] `Modulation`

[2.D] `Shut off valve`

[2.E] `WD curve type`

Setpoint screen

Control the leaving water temperature for the main zone via setpoint screen [2] `Main zone`.

See "10.3.5 Setpoint screen" [▶ 135].

Schedule

Indicate if the temperature of the leaving water is defined according to a schedule or not.

Influence of the LWT setpoint mode [2.4] is as follows:

- In `Fixed` LWT setpoint mode, the scheduled actions consist of desired leaving water temperatures, either preset or custom.
- In `Weather dependent` LWT setpoint mode, the scheduled actions consist of desired shift actions, either preset or custom.

#	Code	Description
[2.1]	N/A	`Schedule`: ▪ 0: `No` ▪ 1: `Yes`

Heating schedule

Define a heating temperature schedule for the main zone via [2.2] `Heating schedule`.

See "10.3.7 Schedule screen: Example" [▶ 136].

Cooling schedule

Define a cooling temperature schedule for the main zone via [2.3] `Cooling schedule`.

See "10.3.7 Schedule screen: Example" [▶ 136].

Setpoint mode

Define the setpoint mode:

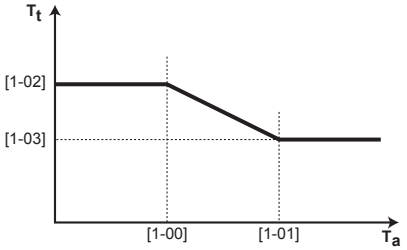
- `Fixed`: the desired leaving water temperature does not depend on the outdoor ambient temperature.
- In `WD heating, fixed cooling` mode, the desired leaving water temperature:
  - depends on the outdoor ambient temperature for heating
  - does NOT depend on the outdoor ambient temperature for cooling
- In `Weather dependent` mode, the desired leaving water temperature depends on the outdoor ambient temperature.

#	Code	Description
[2.4]	N/A	`Setpoint mode`: ▪ `Fixed` ▪ `WD heating, fixed cooling` ▪ `Weather dependent`

When weather dependent operation is active, low outdoor temperatures will result in warmer water and vice versa. During weather dependent operation, the user can shift the water temperature up or down by a maximum of 10°C.

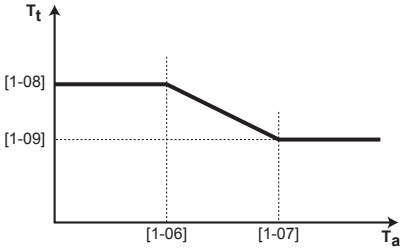
Heating WD curve

Set weather-dependent heating for the main zone (if [2.4]=1 or 2):

#	Code	Description
[2.5]	[1-00] [1-01] [1-02] [1-03]	Set weather-dependent heating in [2.5] `Heating WD curve`:  T_t Target leaving water temperature (main zone) T_a Outdoor temperature Set weather-dependent heating in [9.I] `Overview field settings`: ▪ [1-00]: Low outdoor ambient temperature. –40°C~+5°C ▪ [1-01]: High outdoor ambient temperature. 10°C~25°C ▪ [1-02]: Desired leaving water temperature when the outdoor temperature equals or drops below the low ambient temperature. [9-01]°C~[9-00]°C **Note:** This value should be higher than [1-03] as for low outdoor temperatures warmer water is required. ▪ [1-03]: Desired leaving water temperature when the outdoor temperature equals or rises above the high ambient temperature. [9-01]°C~min(45, [9-00])°C **Note:** This value should be lower than [1-02] as for high outdoor temperatures less warm water is required.

Cooling WD curve

Set weather-dependent cooling for the main zone (if [2.4]=2):

#	Code	Description
[2.6]	[1-06] [1-07] [1-08] [1-09]	Set weather-dependent cooling in [2.6] `Cooling WD curve`:  **T_t** Target leaving water temperature (main zone) **T_a** Outdoor temperature Set weather-dependent heating in [9.l] `Overview field settings`: ▪ [1-06]: Low outdoor ambient temperature. 10°C~25°C ▪ [1-07]: High outdoor ambient temperature. 25°C~43°C ▪ [1-08]: Desired leaving water temperature when the outdoor temperature equals or drops below the low ambient temperature. [9-03]°C~[9-02]°C **Note:** This value should be higher than [1-09] as for low outdoor temperatures less cold water is required. ▪ [1-09]: Desired leaving water temperature when the outdoor temperature equals or rises above the high ambient temperature. [9-03]°C~[9-02]°C **Note:** This value should be lower than [1-08] as for high outdoor temperatures colder water is required.

Emitter type

Heating up or cooling down the main zone can take longer. This depends on:

- The water volume of the system
- The heater emitter type of the main zone

The setting `Emitter type` can compensate for a slow or a quick heating/cooling system during the heat up/cool down cycle. In room thermostat control, `Emitter type` influences the maximum modulation of the desired leaving water temperature, and the possibility for usage of the automatic cooling/heating changeover based on the indoor ambient temperature.

It is important to set `Emitter type` correctly and in accordance with your system layout. The target delta T for the main zone depends on it.

#	Code	Description
[2.7]	[2-0C]	`Emitter type`: ▪ 0: `Underfloor heating` ▪ 1: `Fancoil unit` ▪ 2: `Radiator`

The setting `Emitter type` influences the space heating setpoint range and the target delta T in heating as follows:

`Emitter type` Main zone	Space heating setpoint range [9-01]~[9-00]	Target delta T in heating [1-0B]
0: `Underfloor heating`	Maximum 55°C	Variable (see [2.B.1])
1: `Fancoil unit`	Maximum 55°C	Variable (see [2.B.1])
2: `Radiator`	Maximum 65°C	Fixed 10°C

NOTICE

The maximum setpoint in space heating depends on the emitter type as can be seen in above table. If there are 2 water temperature zones, then the maximum setpoint is the maximum of the 2 zones.

NOTICE

NOT configuring the system in the following way can cause damage to the heat emitters. If there are 2 zones, it is important that in heating:

- the zone with the lowest water temperature is configured as the main zone, and
- the zone with the highest water temperature is configured as the additional zone.

NOTICE

If there are 2 zones and the emitter types are wrongly configured, water of high temperature can be sent towards a low temperature emitter (underfloor heating). To avoid this:

- Install an aquastat/thermostatic valve to avoid too high temperatures towards a low temperature emitter.
- Make sure you set the emitter types for the main zone [2.7] and for the additional zone [3.7] correctly in accordance with the connected emitter.

NOTICE

Average emitter temperature = Leaving water temperature – (Delta T)/2

This means that for a same leaving water temperature setpoint, the average emitter temperature of radiators is lower than that of underfloor heating because of a bigger delta T.

Example radiators: 40–10/2=**35°C**

Example underfloor heating: 40–5/2=**37.5°C**

To compensate, you can:

- Increase the weather-dependent curve desired temperatures [2.5].
- Enable leaving water temperature modulation and increase the maximum modulation [2.C].

Setpoint range

To prevent a wrong (i.e. too hot or too cold) leaving water temperature for the main leaving water temperature zone, limit its temperature range.

NOTICE

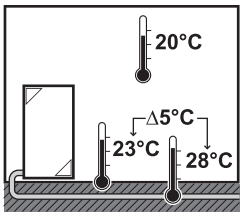
In case of a floor heating application it is important to limit the:

- maximum leaving water temperature at heating operation according to the specifications of the floor heating installation.
- the minimum leaving water temperature at cooling operation to 18~20°C to prevent condensation on the floor.

NOTICE

- When adjusting the leaving water temperature ranges, all desired leaving water temperatures are also adjusted to guarantee they are between the limits.
- Always balance between the desired leaving water temperature with the desired room temperature and/or the capacity (according to the design and selection of the heat emitters). The desired leaving water temperature is the result of several settings (preset values, shift values, weather-dependent curves, modulation). As a result, too high or too low leaving water temperatures could occur which lead to overtemperatures or capacity shortage. By limiting the leaving water temperature range to adequate values (depending on the heat emitter), such situations can be avoided.

Example: In heating mode, leaving water temperatures must be sufficiently higher than the room temperatures. To avoid that the room cannot heat up as desired, set the minimum leaving water temperature to 28°C.



#	Code	Description
Leaving water temperature range for the main leaving water temperature zone (= the leaving water temperature zone with the lowest leaving water temperature in heating operation and the highest leaving water temperature in cooling operation)		
[2.8.1]	[9-01]	`Heating minimum`: ▪ 15°C~37°C
[2.8.2]	[9-00]	`Heating maximum`: ▪ [2-0C]=2 (emitter type main zone = radiator) 37°C~65°C ▪ Else: 37°C~55°C
[2.8.3]	[9-03]	`Cooling minimum`: ▪ 5°C~18°C
[2.8.4]	[9-02]	`Cooling maximum`: ▪ 18°C~22°C

Control

Define how the operation of the unit is controlled.

Control	In this control...
`Leaving water`	Unit operation is decided based on the leaving water temperature regardless the actual room temperature and/or heating or cooling demand of the room.
`External room thermostat`	Unit operation is decided by the external thermostat or equivalent (e.g. heat pump convector).
`Room thermostat`	Unit operation is decided based on the ambient temperature of the dedicated Human Comfort Interface (BRC1HHDA used as room thermostat).

#	Code	Description
[2.9]	[C-07]	▪ 0: `Leaving water` ▪ 1: `External room thermostat` ▪ 2: `Room thermostat`

Thermostat type

Only applicable in external room thermostat control.

NOTICE

If an external room thermostat is used, the external room thermostat will control the room frost protection. However, the room frost protection is only possible if [C.2] `Space heating/cooling=On`.

#	Code	Description
[2.A]	[C-05]	External room thermostat type for the main zone: ▪ 1: `1 contact`: The used external room thermostat can only send a thermo ON/OFF condition. There is no separation between heating or cooling demand. The room thermostat is connected to only 1 digital input (X2M/35). Select this value in case of a connection to the heat pump convector (FWXV). ▪ 2: `2 contacts`: The used external room thermostat can send a separate heating/cooling thermo ON/OFF condition. The room thermostat is connected to 2 digital inputs (X2M/35 and X2M/34). Select this value in case of a connection to the wired (EKRTWA) or wireless (EKRTR1) room thermostat

Leaving water temperature: Delta T

In heating for the main zone, the target delta T (temperature difference) depends on the selected emitter type for the main zone.

The difference delta T indicates, depends on the operation mode:

- In heating mode, delta T indicates the temperature difference between the leaving water setpoint and entering water.
- In cooling mode, delta T indicates the temperature difference between entering and leaving water temperature.

The unit is designed to support underfloor loops operation. The recommended leaving water temperature for underfloor loops is 35°C. In such case, the unit will realize a temperature difference of 5°C, which means that the entering water temperature is around 30°C.

Depending on the installed type of heat emitters (radiators, heat pump convector, underfloor loops) or situation, you can change the difference between entering and leaving water temperature.

Note: The pump will regulate its flow to keep the delta T. In some special cases, the measured delta T can differ from the set value.

INFORMATION

When only the backup heater is active in heating, delta T will be controlled according to the fixed capacity of the backup heater. It is possible that this delta T is different from the selected target delta T.

INFORMATION

In heating, the target delta T will only be achieved after some operation time, when the setpoint is being reached, because of the big difference between leaving water temperature setpoint and inlet temperature at startup.

INFORMATION

If the main zone or the additional zone has a heating demand, and this zone is equipped with radiators, then the target delta T that the unit will use in heating operation will be 10°C fixed.

If the zones are not equipped with radiators, then in heating the unit will give priority to the target delta T for the additional zone, if there is a heating demand in the additional zone.

In cooling the unit will give priority to the target delta T for the additional zone, if there is a cooling demand in the additional zone.

#	Code	Description
[2.B.1]	[1-0B]	`Delta T heating`: A minimum temperature difference is required for proper operation of heat emitters in heating mode. ▪ If [2-0C]=2, this is fixed to 10°C ▪ Else: 3°C~10°C
[2.B.2]	[1-0D]	`Delta T cooling`: A minimum temperature difference is required for proper operation of heat emitters in cooling mode. ▪ 3°C~10°C

Leaving water temperature: Modulation

Only applicable in case of room thermostat control.

When using the room thermostat functionality, the customer needs to set the desired room temperature. The unit will supply hot water to the heat emitters and the room will be heated.

Additionally, also the desired leaving water temperature must be configured: if `Modulation` is enabled, the unit automatically calculates the desired leaving water temperature. These calculations are based on:

- the preset temperatures, or

- the desired weather-dependent temperatures (if weather-dependent is enabled)

Moreover, with `Modulation` enabled, the desired leaving water temperature is lowered or raised in function of the desired room temperature and the difference between the actual and the desired room temperature. This results in:

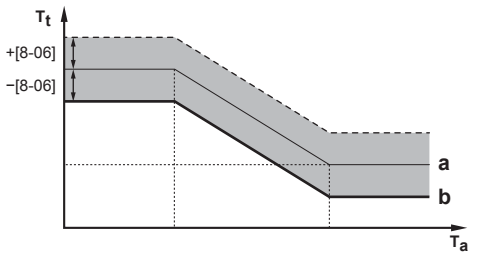
- stable room temperatures, exactly matching the desired temperature (higher comfort level)
- less on/off cycles (lower noise level, higher comfort and higher efficiency)
- water temperatures as low as possible to match the desired temperature (higher efficiency)

If `Modulation` is disabled, set the desired leaving water temperature via [2] `Main zone`.

#	Code	Description
[2.C.1]	[8-05]	`Modulation`: ▪ 0 `No` (disabled) ▪ 1 `Yes` (enabled) **Note:** The desired leaving water temperature can only be read out on the user interface.
[2.C.2]	[8-06]	`Max modulation`: ▪ 0°C~10°C This is the temperature value by which the desired leaving water temperature is increased or decreased.

INFORMATION

When leaving water temperature modulation is enabled, the weather-dependent curve needs to be set to a higher position than [8-06] plus the minimum leaving water temperature setpoint required to reach a stable condition on the comfort setpoint for the room. To increase efficiency, modulation can lower the leaving water setpoint. By setting the weather-dependent curve to a higher position, it cannot drop below the minimum setpoint. See the illustration below.



a Weather-dependent curve
b Minimum leaving water temperature setpoint required to reach a stable condition on the comfort setpoint for the room.

Shut off valve

The following is only applicable in case of 2 leaving water temperature zones. In case of 1 leaving water temperature zone, connect the shut-off valve to the heating/cooling output.

The shut off valve for the main leaving water temperature zone can close under these circumstances:

INFORMATION

During defrost operation, the shut-off valve is ALWAYS opened.

`During thermo`: If [F-0B] is enabled, the shut off valve closes when there is no heating demand from the main zone. Enable this setting to:

- avoid leaving water supply to the heat emitters in the main LWT zone (through the mixing valve station) when there is request from the additional LWT zone.
- activate the ON/OFF pump of the mixing valve station ONLY when there is demand.

#	Code	Description
[2.D.1]	[F-0B]	The shut off valve: ▪ 0 `No`: is NOT influenced by heating or cooling demand. ▪ 1 `Yes`: closes when there is NO heating or cooling demand.

INFORMATION

The setting [F-0B] is only valid when there is a thermostat or external room thermostat request setting (NOT in case of leaving water temperature setting).

`During cooling`: If [F-0B] is enabled, the shut off valve closes when the unit is running in cooling operation mode. Enable this setting to avoid cold leaving water through the heat emitter and the forming of condensation (e.g. under floor heating loops or radiators).

#	Code	Description
[2.D.2]	[F-0C]	The shut off valve: ▪ 0 `No`: is NOT influenced by changing the space operation mode to cooling. ▪ 1 `Yes`: closes when the space operation mode is cooling.

WD curve type

The weather dependent curve can be defined using the `2-points` method or the `Slope-Offset` method.

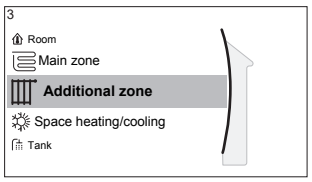
See "10.4.2 2-points curve" [▸ 141] and "10.4.3 Slope-offset curve" [▸ 142].

#	Code	Description
[2.E]	N/A	▪ `2-points` ▪ `Slope-Offset`

10.5.4 Additional zone

Overview

The following items are listed in the submenu:



[3] Additional zone

Setpoint screen

[3.1] Schedule

[3.2] Heating schedule

[3.3] Cooling schedule

[3.4] Setpoint mode

[3.5] Heating WD curve

[3.6] Cooling WD curve

[3.7] Emitter type

[3.8] Setpoint range

[3.9] Control

[3.A] Thermostat type

[3.B] Delta T

[3.C] WD curve type

Setpoint screen

Control the leaving water temperature for the additional zone via setpoint screen [3] Additional zone.

See "10.3.5 Setpoint screen" [▸ 135].

Schedule

Indicates if the desired leaving water temperature is according to a schedule.

See "10.5.3 Main zone" [▸ 150].

#	Code	Description
[3.1]	N/A	Schedule: ▪ No ▪ Yes

Heating schedule

Define a heating temperature schedule for the additional zone via [3.2] Heating schedule.

See "10.3.7 Schedule screen: Example" [▸ 136].

Cooling schedule

Define a cooling temperature schedule for the additional zone via [3.3] Cooling schedule.

See "10.3.7 Schedule screen: Example" [▸ 136].

Setpoint mode

The setpoint mode of the additional zone can be independently set from the setpoint mode of the main zone.

See "**Setpoint mode**" [▸ 152].

#	Code	Description
[3.4]	N/A	`Setpoint mode`: ▪ `Fixed` ▪ `WD heating, fixed cooling` ▪ `Weather dependent`

WD curve type

The weather dependent curve can be defined using the `2-points` method or the `Slope-Offset` method.

Also see "10.4.2 2-points curve" [▸ 141] and "10.4.3 Slope-offset curve" [▸ 142].

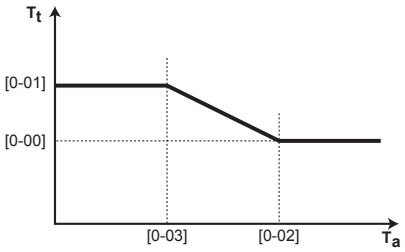
The curve type in the menu of the additional zone is read only. It corresponds to the curve type that is in use for the main zone. Thus, changing the curve type for the additional zone must be done in the menu of the main zone: [2.E] `WD curve type`.

Also see "10.5.3 Main zone" [▸ 150].

#	Code	Description
[2.E]	N/A	▪ `2-points` ▪ `Slope-Offset`

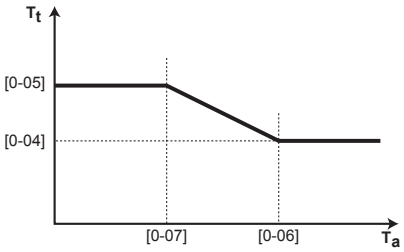
Heating WD curve

Set weather-dependent heating for the additional zone (if [3.4]=1 or 2):

#	Code	Description
[3.5]	[0-00] [0-01] [0-02] [0-03]	Set weather-dependent heating:  ▪ T_t: Target leaving water temperature (additional zone) ▪ T_a: Outdoor temperature ▪ [0-03]: Low outdoor ambient temperature. –40°C~+5°C ▪ [0-02]: High outdoor ambient temperature. 10°C~25°C ▪ [0-01]: Desired leaving water temperature when the outdoor temperature equals or drops below the low ambient temperature. [9-05]°C~[9-06]°C **Note:** This value should be higher than [0-00] as for low outdoor temperatures warmer water is required. ▪ [0-00]: Desired leaving water temperature when the outdoor temperature equals or rises above the high ambient temperature. [9-05]~min(45, [9-06])°C **Note:** This value should be lower than [0-01] as for high outdoor temperatures less warm water is required.

Cooling WD curve

Set weather-dependent cooling for the additional zone (if [3.4]=2):

#	Code	Description
[3.6]	[0-04] [0-05] [0-06] [0-07]	Set weather-dependent cooling:  ▪ T_t: Target leaving water temperature (additional zone) ▪ T_a: Outdoor temperature ▪ [0-07]: Low outdoor ambient temperature. 10°C~25°C ▪ [0-06]: High outdoor ambient temperature. 25°C~43°C ▪ [0-05]: Desired leaving water temperature when the outdoor temperature equals or drops below the low ambient temperature. [9-07]°C~[9-08]°C **Note:** This value should be higher than [0-04] as for low outdoor temperatures less cold water is required. ▪ [0-04]: Desired leaving water temperature when the outdoor temperature equals or rises above the high ambient temperature. [9-07]°C~[9-08]°C **Note:** This value should be lower than [0-05] as for high outdoor temperatures colder water is required.

Emitter type

For more information about `Emitter type`, see "10.5.3 Main zone" [▸ 150].

#	Code	Description
[3.7]	[2-0D]	`Emitter type`: ▪ 0: `Underfloor heating` ▪ 1: `Fancoil unit` ▪ 2: `Radiator`

The setting of the emitter type has an influence on the space heating setpoint range and the target delta T in heating as follows:

Emitter type Additional zone	Space heating setpoint range [9-05]~[9-06]	Target delta T in heating [1-0C]
0: `Underfloor heating`	Maximum 55°C	Variable (see [3.B.1])
1: `Fancoil unit`	Maximum 55°C	Variable (see [3.B.1])
2: `Radiator`	Maximum 65°C	Fixed 10°C

Setpoint range

For more information about `Setpoint range`, see "10.5.3 Main zone" [▸ 150].

#	Code	Description
Leaving water temperature range for the additional leaving water temperature zone (= the leaving water temperature zone with the highest leaving water temperature in heating operation and the lowest leaving water temperature in cooling operation)		
[3.8.1]	[9-05]	`Heating minimum`: 15°C~37°C
[3.8.2]	[9-06]	`Heating maximum` ▪ [2-0D]=2 (emitter type additional zone = radiator) 37°C~65°C ▪ Else: 37°C~55°C
[3.8.3]	[9-07]	`Cooling minimum` ▪ 5°C~18°C
[3.8.4]	[9-08]	`Cooling maximum` ▪ 18°C~22°C

Control

The control type for the additional zone is read only. It is determined by the control type of the main zone.

See "10.5.3 Main zone" [▸ 150].

#	Code	Description
[3.9]	N/A	`Control`: ▪ `Leaving water` if the control type of the main zone is `Leaving water`. ▪ `External room thermostat` if the control type of the main zone is: - `External room thermostat`,or - `Room thermostat`.

Thermostat type

Only applicable in external room thermostat control.

Also see "10.5.3 Main zone" [▸ 150].

#	Code	Description
[3.A]	[C-06]	External room thermostat type for the additional zone: ▪ 1: `1 contact`. Connected to only 1 digital input (X2M/35a) ▪ 2: `2 contacts`. Connected to 2 digital inputs (X2M/34a and X2M/35a)

Leaving water temperature: Delta T

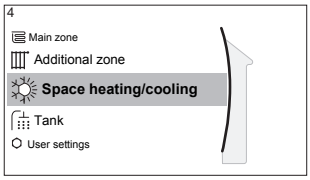
For more information, see "10.5.3 Main zone" [▸ 150].

#	Code	Description
[3.B.1]	[1-0C]	`Delta T heating`: A minimum temperature difference is required for the good operation of heat emitters in heating mode. ▪ If [2-0D] = 2, this is fixed to 10°C ▪ Else: 3°C~10°C
[3.B.2]	[1-0E]	`Delta T cooling`: A minimum temperature difference is required for the good operation of heat emitters in cooling mode. ▪ 3°C~10°C

10.5.5 Space heating/cooling

Overview

The following items are listed in the submenu:



[4] `Space heating/cooling`

[4.1] `Operation mode`

[4.2] `Operation mode schedule`

[4.3] `Operation range`

[4.4] `Number of zones`

[4.5] `Pump operation mode`

[4.6] `Unit type`

[4.7] `Pump limitation`

[4.8] `Pump limitation`

[4.9] `Pump outside range`

[4.A] `Increase around 0°C`

[4.B] `Overshoot`

[4.C] `Antifrost`

About space operation modes

Your unit can be a heating or a heating/cooling model:

- If your unit is a heating model, it can heat up a space.
- If your unit is a heating/cooling model, it can both heat up and cool down a space. You have to tell the system which operation mode to use.

To determine if a heating/cooling heat pump model is installed

1	Go to [4]: `Space heating/cooling`.	
2	Check if [4.1] `Operation mode` is listed and editable. If so, a heating/cooling heat pump model is installed.	

To tell the system which space operation to use, you can:

You can...	Location
Check which space operation mode is currently used.	Home screen

You can...	Location
Set the space operation mode permanently.	Main menu
Restrict automatic changeover according to a monthly schedule.	

To check which space operation mode is currently used

The space operation mode is displayed on the home screen:

- When the unit is in heating mode, the icon is shown.
- When the unit is in cooling mode, the icon is shown.

The status indicator shows if the unit is currently in operation:

- When the unit is not in operation, the status indicator will show a blue pulsation with an interval of approximately 5 seconds.
- While the unit is in operation, the status indicator will light up blue constantly.

To set the space operation mode

1	Go to [4.1]: `Space heating/cooling` > `Operation mode`	
2	Select one of the following options: ▪ `Heating`: Only heating mode ▪ `Cooling`: Only cooling mode ▪ `Automatic`: The operation mode changes automatically between heating and cooling based on the outdoor temperature. Restricted per month according to the `Operation mode schedule` [4.2].	

Automatic heating/cooling changeover is only applicable for EHBX and EHVX.

When `Automatic` is selected, the unit switches its operation mode, based on the `Operation mode schedule` [4.2]. In this schedule, the end user indicates which operation is allowed for each month.

To restrict automatic changeover according to a schedule

Conditions: You set the space operation mode to `Automatic`.

1	Go to [4.2]: `Space heating/cooling` > `Operation mode schedule`.	
2	Select a month.	
3	For each month, select an option: ▪ `Reversible`: Not restricted ▪ `Heating only`: Restricted ▪ `Cooling only`: Restricted	
4	Confirm the changes.	

Example: Changeover restrictions

When	Restriction
During cold season. **Example:** October, November, December, January, February and March.	`Heating only`

When	Restriction
During warm season. **Example:** June, July and August.	`Cooling only`
In-between. **Example:** April, May and September.	`Reversible`

The unit determines its operation mode by the outdoor temperature if:

- `Operation mode`=`Automatic`, and
- `Operation mode schedule`=`Reversible`.

The unit determines its operation mode in such a way that it will always stay within the following operation ranges:

- `Space heating off temperature`
- `Space cooling off temperature`

The outdoor temperature is time-averaged. If the outdoor temperature drops, the operation mode will switch to heating and vice versa.

If the outdoor temperature is between the `Space heating off temperature` and the `Space cooling off temperature`, the operation mode remains unchanged.

Operation range

Depending on the average outdoor temperature, the operation of the unit in space heating or space cooling is prohibited.

#	Code	Description
[4.3.1]	[4-02]	`Space heating off temperature`: When the averaged outdoor temperature rises above this value, space heating is turned off.[(a)] ▪ 14°C~35°C
[4.3.2]	[F-01]	`Space cooling off temperature`: When the averaged outdoor temperature drops below this value, space cooling is turned off.[(a)] ▪ 10°C~35°C

[(a)] This setting is also used in automatic heating/cooling changeover.

Exception: If the system is configured in room thermostat control with one leaving water temperature zone and quick heat emitters, the operation mode will change based on the measured indoor temperature. Besides the desired heating/cooling room temperature, the installer sets a hysteresis value (e.g. when in heating, this value is related to the desired cooling temperature) and an offset value (e.g. when in heating, this value is related to the desired heating temperature).

Example: A unit is configured as following:

- Desired room temperature in heating mode: 22°C
- Desired room temperature in cooling mode: 24°C
- Hysteresis value: 1°C
- Offset: 4°C

Changeover from heating to cooling will occur when the room temperature rises above the maximum of the desired cooling temperature added by the hysteresis value (thus 24+1=25°C) and the desired heating temperature added by the offset value (thus 22+4=26°C).

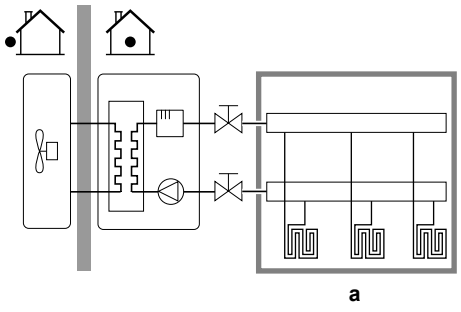
Oppositely, changeover from cooling to heating will occur when the room temperature drops below the minimum of the desired heating temperature subtracted by the hysteresis value (thus 22–1=21°C) and the desired cooling temperature subtracted by the offset value (thus 24–4=20°C)

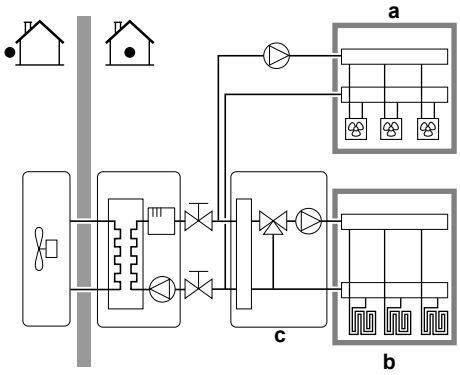
Guard timer to prevent too frequent changing from heating to cooling and vice versa.

#	Code	Description
Changeover settings related to the indoor temperature. Only applicable when `Automatic` is selected and the system is configured in room thermostat control with 1 leaving water temperature zone and quick heat emitters.		
N/A	[4-0B]	Hysteresis: ensures that changeover is only done when necessary. The space operation only changes from heating to cooling when the room temperature rises above the desired cooling temperature added by the hysteresis value. ▪ Range: 1°C~10°C
N/A	[4-0D]	Offset: ensures that the active desired room temperature is always reached. In heating mode, the space operation only changes when the room temperature rises above the desired heating temperature added by the offset value. ▪ Range: 1°C~10°C

Number of zones

The system can supply leaving water to up to 2 water temperature zones. During configuration, the number of water zones must be set.

#	Code	Description
[4.4]	[7-02]	▪ 0: `Single zone` Only one leaving water temperature zone:  **a** Main LWT zone

#	Code	Description
[4.4]	[7-02]	▪ 1: `Dual zone` Two leaving water temperature zones. The main leaving water temperature zone consists of the higher load heat emitters and a mixing station to achieve the desired leaving water temperature. In heating:  **a** Additional LWT zone: Highest temperature **b** Main LWT zone: Lowest temperature **c** Mixing station

NOTICE

NOT configuring the system in the following way can cause damage to the heat emitters. If there are 2 zones, it is important that in heating:

- the zone with the lowest water temperature is configured as the main zone, and
- the zone with the highest water temperature is configured as the additional zone.

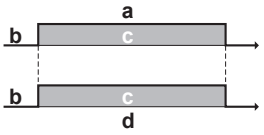
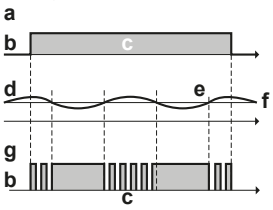
NOTICE

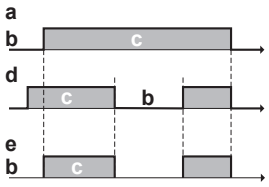
If there are 2 zones and the emitter types are wrongly configured, water of high temperature can be sent towards a low temperature emitter (underfloor heating). To avoid this:

- Install an aquastat/thermostatic valve to avoid too high temperatures towards a low temperature emitter.
- Make sure you set the emitter types for the main zone [2.7] and for the additional zone [3.7] correctly in accordance with the connected emitter.

Pump operation mode

When the space heating/cooling operation is OFF, the pump is always OFF. When space heating/cooling operation is ON, you have the choice between these operation modes:

#	Code	Description
[4.5]	[F–0D]	`Pump operation mode`: ▪ 0 `Continuous`: Continuous pump operation, regardless of thermo ON or OFF condition. **Remark:** Continuous pump operation requires more energy than sample or request pump operation.  **a** Space heating/cooling control **b** Off **c** On **d** Pump operation
[4.5]	[F-0D]	▪ 1 `Sample`: The pump is ON when there is heating or cooling demand as the leaving water temperature has not yet reached the desired temperature yet. When thermo OFF condition occurs, the pump runs every 3 minutes to check the water temperature and demand heating or cooling if necessary. **Remark:** Sample is ONLY available in leaving water temperature control.  **a** Space heating/cooling control **b** Off **c** On **d** LWT temperature **e** Actual **f** Desired **g** Pump operation

#	Code	Description
[4.5]	[F-0D]	▪ 2 `Request`: Pump operation based on request. **Example:** Using a room thermostat and thermostat creates thermo ON/OFF condition. **Remark:** NOT available in leaving water temperature control.  **a** Space heating/cooling control **b** Off **c** On **d** Heating demand (by external room thermostat or room thermostat) **e** Pump operation

Unit type

In this part of the menu it can be read out which type of unit is used:

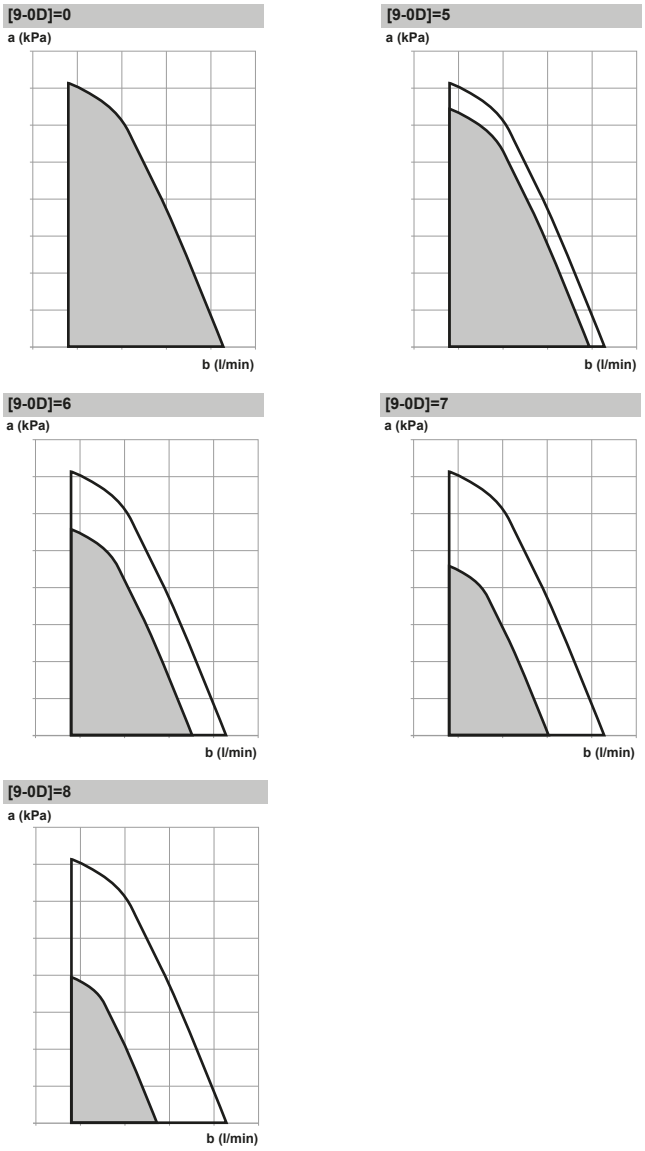
#	Code	Description
[4.6]	[E-02]	`Unit type`: ▪ 0 `Reversible` ▪ 1 `Heating only`

Pump limitation

Pump speed limitation [9-0D] defines the maximum pump speed. In normal conditions, the default setting should NOT be modified. The pump speed limitation will be overruled when the flow rate is in the range of the minimum flow (error 7H).

#	Code	Description
[4.7]	[9-0D]	`Pump limitation`: ▪ 0: `No limitation` ▪ 1~4: General limitation. There is limitation in all conditions. The required delta T control and comfort are NOT guaranteed. ▪ 5~8: Limitation when no actuators. When there is no heating output, the pump speed limitation is applicable. When there is heating output, the pump speed is only determined by delta T in relation to the required capacity. With this limitation range, delta T is possible and the comfort is guaranteed.

The maximum values depend on the unit type:



a External static pressure
b Water flow rate

Pump outside range

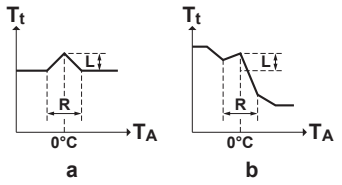
When the pump operation function is disabled the pump will stop if the outdoor temperature is higher than the value set by the `Space heating off temperature` [4-02] or if the outdoor temperature drops below the value set by the `Space cooling off temperature` [F-01]. When the pump operation is enabled, the pump operation is possible at all outdoor temperatures.

#	Code	Description
[4.9]	[F-00]	Pump operation: ▪ 0: Disabled if outdoor temperature is higher than [4-02] or lower than [F-01] depending on heating/cooling operation mode. ▪ 1: Possible at all outdoor temperatures.

Increase around 0°C

Use this setting to compensate for possible heat losses of the building due to the evaporation of melted ice or snow. (e.g. in cold region countries).

In heating operation, the desired leaving water temperature is locally increased around an outdoor temperature of 0°C.This compensation can be selected when using an absolute or a weather dependent desired temperature (see illustration below).



a Absolute desired LWT
b Weather dependent desired LWT

#	Code	Description
[4.A]	[D-03]	`Increase around 0°C`: ▪ 0: `No` ▪ 1: `increase 2°C, span 4°C` ▪ 2: `increase 4°C, span 4°C` ▪ 3: `increase 2°C, span 8°C` ▪ 4: `increase 4°C, span 8°C`

Overshoot

This function defines how much the water temperature may rise above the desired leaving water temperature before the compressor stops. The compressor will start up again when the leaving water temperature drops below the desired leaving water temperature. This function is ONLY applicable in heating mode.

#	Code	Description
[4.B]	[9-04]	`Overshoot`: ▪ 1°C~4°C

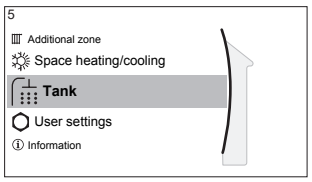
Antifrost

Room frost protection [1.4] prevents the room from getting too cold. For more information about room frost protection, see "10.5.2 Room" [▸ 146].

10.5.6 Tank

Overview

The following items are listed in the submenu:



[5] Tank

Setpoint screen

[5.1] Powerful operation

[5.2] Comfort setpoint

[5.3] Eco setpoint

[5.4] Reheat setpoint

[5.5] Schedule

[5.6] Heat up mode

[5.7] Disinfection

[5.8] Maximum

[5.9] Hysteresis

[5.A] Hysteresis

[5.B] Setpoint mode

[5.C] WD curve

[5.D] Margin

Tank setpoint screen

You can set the domestic hot water temperature using the setpoint screen. For more information about how to do this, see "10.3.5 Setpoint screen" [▸ 135].

Powerful operation

You can use powerful operation to immediately start heating up the water to the preset value (Storage comfort). However, this consumes extra energy. If powerful operation is active, will be shown on the home screen.

To activate powerful operation

Activate or deactivate Powerful operation as follows:

1	Go to [5.1]: Tank > Powerful operation	
2	Turn powerful operation Off or On.	

Usage example: You immediately need more hot water

If you are in the following situation:

- You already consumed most of your hot water.
- You cannot wait for the next scheduled action to heat up the DHW tank.

Then you can activate DHW powerful operation.

Advantage: The DHW tank immediately starts heating up the water to the preset value (Storage comfort).

INFORMATION

When powerful operation is active, the risk of space heating/cooling and capacity shortage comfort problems is significant. In case of frequent domestic hot water operation, frequent and long space heating/cooling interruptions will happen.

Comfort setpoint

Only applicable when domestic hot water preparation is Schedule only or Schedule + reheat. When programming the schedule, you can make use of the comfort setpoint as a preset value. When you later want to change the storage setpoint, you only have to do it in one place.

The tank will heat up until the **storage comfort temperature** has been reached. It is the higher desired temperature when a storage comfort action is scheduled.

Additionally, a storage stop can be programmed. This feature puts a stop to tank heating even if the setpoint has NOT been reached. Only program a storage stop when tank heating is absolutely undesirable.

#	Code	Description
[5.2]	[6-0A]	`Comfort setpoint`: ▪ 30°C~[6-0E]°C

Eco setpoint

The **storage economic temperature** denotes the lower desired tank temperature. It is the desired temperature when a storage economic action is scheduled (preferably during day).

#	Code	Description
[5.3]	[6-0B]	`Eco setpoint`: ▪ 30°C~min(50,[6-0E])°C

Reheat setpoint

Desired reheat tank temperature, used:

- in `Schedule + reheat` mode, during reheat mode: the guaranteed minimum tank temperature is set by the `Reheat setpoint` minus the reheat hysteresis. If the tank temperature drops below this value, the tank is heated up.
- during storage comfort, to prioritize the domestic hot water preparation. When the tank temperature rises above this value, domestic hot water preparation and space heating/cooling are executed sequentially.

#	Code	Description
[5.4]	[6-0C]	`Reheat setpoint`: ▪ 30°C~min(50,[6-0E])°C

Schedule

You can set the tank temperature schedule using the schedule screen. For more information about this screen, see "10.3.7 Schedule screen: Example" [▸ 136].

Heat up mode

The domestic hot water can be prepared in 3 different ways. They differ from each other by the way the desired tank temperature is set and how the unit acts upon it.

#	Code	Description
[5.6]	[6-0D]	`Heat up mode`: ▪ 0: `Reheat only`: Only reheat operation is allowed. ▪ 1: `Schedule + reheat`: The domestic hot water tank is heated according to a schedule and between the scheduled heat up cycles, reheat operation is allowed. ▪ 2: `Schedule only`: The domestic hot water tank can ONLY be heated according to a schedule.

See the operation manual for more details.

Disinfection

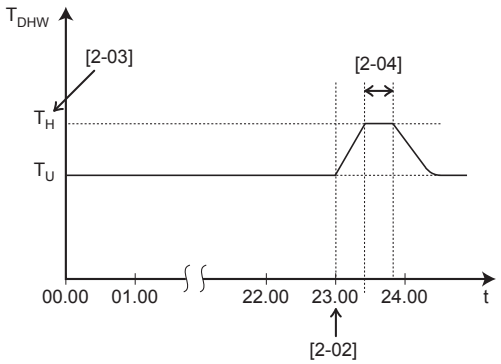
Applies only to installations with a domestic hot water tank.

The disinfection function disinfects the domestic hot water tank by periodically heating the domestic hot water to a specific temperature.

CAUTION

The disinfection function settings MUST be configured by the installer according to the applicable legislation.

#	Code	Description
[5.7.1]	[2-01]	`Activation`: ▪ 0: `No` ▪ 1: `Yes`
[5.7.2]	[2-00]	`Operation day`: ▪ 0: `Every day` ▪ 1: `Monday` ▪ 2: `Tuesday` ▪ 3: `Wednesday` ▪ 4: `Thursday` ▪ 5: `Friday` ▪ 6: `Saturday` ▪ 7: `Sunday`
[5.7.3]	[2-02]	`Start time`
[5.7.4]	[2-03]	`Tank setpoint`: 60°C
[5.7.5]	[2-04]	`Duration`: 40~60 minutes



T_{DHW} Domestic hot water temperature
T_U User setpoint temperature
T_H High setpoint temperature [2-03]
t Time

WARNING

Be aware that the domestic hot water temperature at the hot water tap will be equal to the value selected in field setting [2-03] after a disinfection operation.

When the high domestic hot water temperature can be a potential risk for human injuries, a mixing valve (field supply) shall be installed at the hot water outlet connection of the domestic hot water tank. This mixing valve shall secure that the hot water temperature at the hot water tap never rise above a set maximum value. This maximum allowable hot water temperature shall be selected according to the applicable legislation.

CAUTION

Be sure that the disinfection function start time [5.7.3] with defined duration [5.7.5] is NOT interrupted by possible domestic hot water demand.

NOTICE

Disinfection mode. Even if you turn OFF tank heating operation ([C.3]: `Operation` > `Tank`), disinfection mode will remain active. However, if you turn it OFF while disinfection is running, an AH error occurs.

INFORMATION

In case of error code AH and no interruption of the disinfection function occurred due to domestic hot water tapping, following actions are recommended:

- When the `Reheat only` or `Schedule + reheat` mode is selected, it is recommended to program the start-up of the disinfection function at least 4 hours later than the last expected large hot water tapping. This start-up can be set by installer settings (disinfection function).
- When the `Schedule only` mode is selected, it is recommended to program an `Eco` action 3 hours before the scheduled start-up of the disinfection function to preheat the tank.

INFORMATION

Disinfection function is restarted in case the domestic hot water temperature drops 5°C below the disinfection target temperature within the duration time.

Maximum DHW temperature setpoint

The maximum temperature that users can select for the domestic hot water. You can use this setting to limit the temperatures at the hot water taps.

INFORMATION

During disinfection of the domestic hot water tank, the DHW temperature can exceed this maximum temperature.

INFORMATION

Limit the maximum hot water temperature according to the applicable legislation.

#	Code	Description
[5.8]	[6-0E]	`Maximum`: The maximum temperature that users can select for the domestic hot water. You can use this setting to limit the temperature at the hot water taps. The maximum temperature is NOT applicable during disinfection function. See disinfection function.

Hysteresis

The following ON hysteresis can be set.

Heat pump ON hysteresis

Applicable when domestic hot water preparation is reheat only. When the tank temperature drops below the reheat temperature minus the heat pump ON hysteresis temperature, the tank heats up to the reheat temperature.

The minimum ON temperature is 20°C, even if setpoint hysteresis is smaller than 20°C.

#	Code	Description
[5.9]	[6-00]	Heat pump ON hysteresis ▪ 2°C~40°C

Reheat hysteresis

Applicable when domestic hot water preparation is scheduled+reheat. When the tank temperature drops below the reheat temperature minus the reheat hysteresis temperature, the tank heats up to the reheat temperature.

#	Code	Description
[5.A]	[6-08]	Reheat hysteresis ▪ 2°C~20°C

Setpoint mode

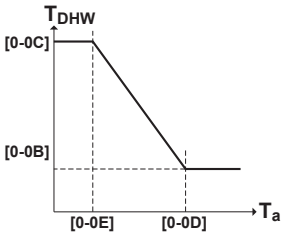
#	Code	Description
[5.B]	N/A	`Setpoint mode`: ▪ `Fixed` ▪ `Weather dependent`

WD curve

When weather dependent operation is active the desired tank temperature is determined automatically depending on the averaged outdoor temperature: low outdoor temperatures will result in higher desired tank temperatures as the cold water tap is colder and vice versa.

In case of `Schedule only` or `Schedule + reheat` domestic hot water preparation, the storage comfort temperature is weather dependent (according to the weather dependent curve), the storage economic and reheat temperature are NOT weather dependent.

In case of **Reheat only** domestic hot water preparation, the desired tank temperature is weather dependent (according to the weather dependent curve). During weather dependent operation, the end-user cannot adjust the desired tank temperature on the user interface. Also see "10.4 Weather-dependent curve" [▶ 141].

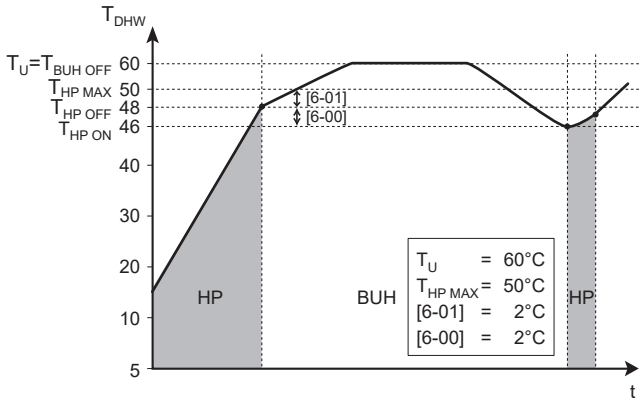
#	Code	Description
[5.C]	[0-0E] [0-0D] [0-0C] [0-0B]	**WD curve**:  ▪ T_{DHW}: The desired tank temperature. ▪ T_a: The (averaged) outdoor ambient temperature ▪ [0-0E]: low outdoor ambient temperature: –40°C~5°C ▪ [0-0D]: high outdoor ambient temperature: 10°C~25°C ▪ [0-0C]: desired tank temperature when the outdoor temperature equals or drops below the low ambient temperature: 45°C~[6-0E]°C ▪ [0-0B]: desired tank temperature when the outdoor temperature equals or rises above the high ambient temperature: 35°C~[6-0E]°C

Margin

In domestic hot water operation, the following hysteresis value can be set for the heat pump operation:

#	Code	Description
[5.D]	[6-01]	The temperature difference determining the heat pump OFF temperature. Range: 0°C~10°C

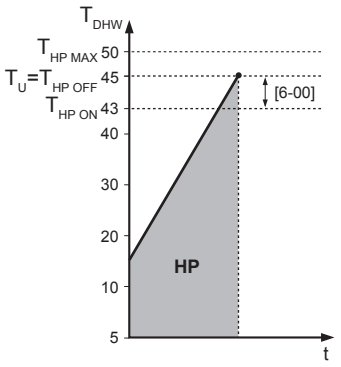
Example: setpoint (T_U)>maximum heat pump temperature–[6-01] ($T_{HP\ MAX}$–[6-01])



BUH Backup heater

HP Heat pump. If heating up time by the heat pump takes too long, auxiliary heating by the backup heater can take place
$T_{BUH\ OFF}$ Backup heater OFF temperature (T_U)
$T_{HP\ MAX}$ Maximum heat pump temperature at sensor in domestic hot water tank
$T_{HP\ OFF}$ Heat pump OFF temperature ($T_{HP\ MAX}$–[6-01])
$T_{HP\ ON}$ Heat pump ON temperature ($T_{HP\ OFF}$–[6-00])
T_{DHW} Domestic hot water temperature
T_U User setpoint temperature (as set on the user interface)
t Time

Example: setpoint (T_U)≤maximum heat pump temperature–[6-01] ($T_{HP\ MAX}$–[6-01])



HP Heat pump. If heating up time by the heat pump takes too long, auxiliary heating by the backup heater can take place
$T_{HP\ MAX}$ Maximum heat pump temperature at sensor in domestic hot water tank
$T_{HP\ OFF}$ Heat pump OFF temperature ($T_{HP\ MAX}$–[6-01])
$T_{HP\ ON}$ Heat pump ON temperature ($T_{HP\ OFF}$–[6-00])
T_{DHW} Domestic hot water temperature
T_U User setpoint temperature (as set on the user interface)
t Time

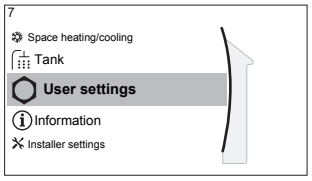
INFORMATION

The maximum heat pump temperature depends on the ambient temperature. For more information, see the operation range.

10.5.7 User settings

Overview

The following items are listed in the submenu:



[7] `User settings`
[7.1] `Language`
[7.2] `Time/date`
[7.3] `Holiday`
[7.4] `Quiet`
[7.5] `Electricity price`
[7.6] `Gas price`

Language

#	Code	Description
[7.1]	N/A	Language

Time/date

#	Code	Description
[7.2]	N/A	Set the local time and date

INFORMATION

By default, daylight savings time is enabled and clock format is set to 24 hours. If you want to change these settings, you can do this in the menu structure (`User settings` > `Time/date`) once the unit is initialised.

Holiday

About holiday mode

During your holiday, you can use the holiday mode to deviate from your normal schedules without having to change them. While holiday mode is active, space heating/cooling operation and domestic hot water operation will be turned off. Room frost protection and anti-legionella operation will remain active.

Typical workflow

Using holiday mode typically consists of the following stages:

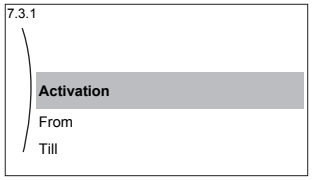
1 Setting the starting date and ending date of your holiday.

2 Activating the holiday mode.

To check if holiday mode is activated and/or running

If is displayed on the home screen, holiday mode is active.

To configure the holiday

1	Activate the holiday mode.	—
	▪ Go to [7.3.1]: `User settings` > `Holiday` > `Activation`. 	
	▪ Select `On`.	
2	Set the first day of your holiday.	—
	▪ Go to [7.3.2]: `From`.	
	▪ Select a date.	
	▪ Confirm the changes.	
3	Set the last day of your holiday.	—
	▪ Go to [7.3.3]: `Till`.	
	▪ Select a date.	
	▪ Confirm the changes.	

Quiet

About quiet mode

You can use quiet mode to decrease the sound of the outdoor unit. However, this also decreases the heating/cooling capacity of the system. There are multiple quiet mode levels.

You can:

- Completely deactivate quiet mode
- Manually activate a quiet mode level until the next scheduled action
- Use and program a quiet mode schedule

> **INFORMATION**
>
> If the outdoor temperature is below zero, we recommend to NOT use the most quiet level.

To check if quiet mode is active

If is displayed on the home screen, quiet mode is active.

To use quiet mode

1	Go to [7.4.1]: `User settings` > `Quiet` > `Activation`.	
2	Do one of the following:	—

If you want to...	Then...	
Completely deactivate quiet mode	Select `Off`.	
Manually activate a quiet mode level	Select the applicable quiet mode level. **Example:** `Most quiet`.	
Use and program a quiet mode schedule	Select `Automatic`.	
	Go to [7.4.2] `Schedule` and program the schedule. For more information about scheduling, see "10.3.7 Schedule screen: Example" [▸ 136].	

Usage example: Baby is sleeping in the afternoon

If you are in the following situation:

- You have programmed a quiet mode schedule:
  - During the night: `Most quiet`.
  - During the day: `Off` to ensure the heating/cooling capacity of the system.
- However, during the afternoon the baby is sleeping and you want it to be quiet.

Then you can do the following:

1	Go to [7.4.1]: `User settings` > `Quiet` > `Activation`.	
2	Select `Most quiet`.	

Advantage:

The outdoor unit runs in its most quiet level.

Electricity prices and gas price

Only applicable in combination with the bivalent function. See also " Bivalent" [▸ 198].

#	Code	Description
[7.5.1]	N/A	`Electricity price` > `High`
[7.5.2]	N/A	`Electricity price` > `Medium`
[7.5.3]	N/A	`Electricity price` > `Low`

#	Code	Description
[7.6]	N/A	Gas price

INFORMATION

Electricity price can only be set when bivalent is ON ([9.C.1] or [C-02]). These values can only be set in menu structure [7.5.1], [7.5.2] and [7.5.3]. Do NOT use overview settings.

To set the gas price

1	Go to [7.6]: User settings > Gas price.	
2	Select the correct gas price.	
3	Confirm the changes.	

INFORMATION

Price value ranging from 0.00~990 valuta/kWh (with 2 significant values).

To set the electricity price

1	Go to [7.5.1]/[7.5.2]/[7.5.3]: User settings > Electricity price > High/Medium/Low.	
2	Select the correct electricity price.	
3	Confirm the changes.	
4	Repeat this for all three electricity prices.	—

INFORMATION

Price value ranging from 0.00~990 valuta/kWh (with 2 significant values).

INFORMATION

If no schedule is set, the Electricity price for High is taken into account.

To set the electricity price schedule timer

1	Go to [7.5.4]: User settings > Electricity price > Schedule.	
2	Program the selection using the scheduling screen. You can set the High, Medium and Low electricity prices according to your electricity supplier.	—
3	Confirm the changes.	

INFORMATION

The values correspond with the electricity price values for High, Medium and Low previously set. If no schedule is set, the electricity price for High is taken into account.

About energy prices in case of an incentive per kWh renewable energy

An incentive can be taken into account when setting the energy prices. Although the running cost can increase, the total operation cost, taking into account the reimbursement will be optimized.

NOTICE

Make sure to modify the setting of the energy prices at the end of the incentive period.

To set the gas price in case of an incentive per kWh renewable energy

Calculate the value for the gas price with the following formula:

- Actual gas price+(Incentive/kWh×0.9)

For the procedure to set the gas price, see "To set the gas price" [▸ 184].

To set the electricity price in case of an incentive per kWh renewable energy

Calculate the value for the electricity price with following formula:

- Actual electricity price+Incentive/kWh

For the procedure to set the electricity price, see "To set the electricity price" [▸ 184].

Example

This is an example and the prices and/or values used in this example are NOT accurate.

Data	Price/kWh
Gas price	4.08
Electricity price	12.49
Renewable heat incentive per kWh	5

Calculation of the gas price

Gas price=Actual gas price+(Incentive/kWh×0.9)

Gas price=4.08+(5×0.9)

Gas price=8.58

Calculation of the electricity price

Electricity price=Actual electricity price+Incentive/kWh

Electricity price=12.49+5

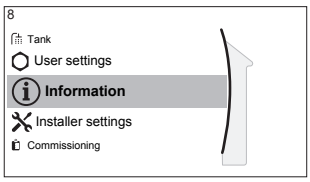
Electricity price=17.49

Price	Value in breadcrumb
Gas: 4.08 /kWh	[7.6]=8.6
Electricity: 12.49 /kWh	[7.5.1]=17

10.5.8 Information

Overview

The following items are listed in the submenu:



[8] Information

[8.1] Energy data

[8.2] Malfunction history

[8.3] Dealer information

[8.4] Sensors

[8.5] Actuators

[8.6] Operation modes

[8.7] About

[8.8] Connection status

[8.9] Running hours

[8.A] Reset

Dealer information

The installer can fill in his contact number here.

#	Code	Description
[8.3]	N/A	Number that users can call in case of problems.

Reset

Reset the configuration settings stored in the MMI (user interface of the indoor unit).

Example: Energy meterings, holiday settings.

INFORMATION

This does not reset the configuration settings and field settings of the indoor unit.

#	Code	Description
[8.A]	N/A	Reset the MMI EEPROM to factory default

Possible read-out information

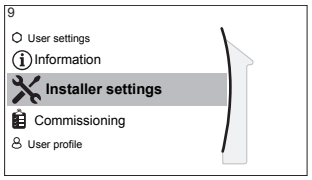
In menu...	You can read out...
[8.1] Energy data	Produced energy, consumed electricity, and consumed gas
[8.2] Malfunction history	Malfunction history
[8.3] Dealer information	Contact/helpdesk number
[8.4] Sensors	Room, tank or domestic hot water, outside, and leaving water temperature (if applicable)
[8.5] Actuators	Status/mode of each actuator **Example:** Domestic hot water pump ON/OFF
[8.6] Operation modes	Current operation mode **Example:** Defrost/oil return mode
[8.7] About	Version information about the system

In menu...	You can read out...
[8.8] Connection status	Information about the connection status of the unit, the room thermostat and the LAN adapter.
[8.9] Running hours	Running hours of specific system components

10.5.9 Installer settings

Overview

The following items are listed in the submenu:



[9] Installer settings
[9.1] Configuration wizard
[9.2] Domestic hot water
[9.3] Backup heater
[9.5] Emergency
[9.6] Balancing
[9.7] Water pipe freeze prevention
[9.8] Benefit kWh power supply
[9.9] Power consumption control
[9.A] Energy metering
[9.B] Sensors
[9.C] Bivalent
[9.D] Alarm output
[9.E] Auto restart
[9.F] Power saving function
[9.G] Disable protections
[9.H] Forced defrost
[9.I] Overview field settings
[9.N] Export MMI settings

Configuration wizard

After first power ON of the system, the user interface will guide you using the configuration wizard. This way you can set the most important initial settings. This way the unit will be able to run properly. Afterwards, more detailed settings can be done via the menu structure if required.

To restart the configuration wizard, go to Installer settings > Configuration wizard [9.1].

Domestic hot water

Domestic hot water

The following setting determines if the system can prepare domestic hot water or not, and which tank is used. This setting is read only.

#	Code	Description
[9.2.1]	[E-05][a] [E-06][a] [E-07][a]	▪ `Integrated` The backup heater will also be used for domestic hot water heating.

[a] Use the menu structure instead of the overview settings. Menu structure setting [9.2.1] replaces the following 3 overview settings:
- [E-05]: Can the system prepare domestic hot water?
- [E-06]: Is a domestic hot water tank installed in the system?
- [E-07]: What kind of domestic hot water tank is installed?

DHW pump

#	Code	Description
[9.2.2]	[D-02]	`DHW pump`: ▪ 0: `No DHW pump`: NOT installed ▪ 1: `Instant hot water`: Installed for instant hot water when water is tapped. The user sets the operation timing of the domestic hot water pump using the schedule. Control of this pump is possible with the user interface. ▪ 2: `Disinfection`: Installed for disinfection. It runs when the disinfection function of the domestic hot water tank is running. No further settings are needed.

See also:

- "6.4.4 DHW pump for instant hot water" [▸ 45]
- "6.4.5 DHW pump for disinfection" [▸ 45]

DHW pump schedule

Program a schedule for the DHW pump **(only for field supplied domestic hot water pump for secondary return).**

Program a domestic hot water pump schedule to determine when to turn on and off the pump.

When turned on, the pump runs and makes sure hot water is instantly available at the tap. To save energy, only turn on the pump during periods of the day when instant hot water is necessary.

Backup heater

Besides the type of backup heater, the voltage, configuration and capacity must be set on the user interface.

The capacities for the different steps of the backup heater must be set for the energy metering and/or power consumption feature to work properly. When measuring the resistance value of each heater, you can set the exact heater capacity and this will lead to more accurate energy data.

Backup heater type

The backup heater is adapted to be connected to most common European electricity grids. The type of backup heater must be set on the user interface. For units with a built-in backup heater, the type of heater can be viewed but not changed.

#	Code	Description
[9.3.1]	[E-03]	▪ 2: 3V ▪ 3: 6V ▪ 4: 9W

Voltage

- For a 3V model, this is fixed to 230V, 1ph.
- For a 6V model, this can be set to:
  - 230V, 1ph
  - 230V, 3ph
- For a 9W model, this is fixed to 400V, 3ph.

#	Code	Description
[9.3.2]	[5-0D]	▪ 0: 230V, 1ph ▪ 1: 230V, 3ph ▪ 2: 400V, 3ph

Configuration

The backup heater can be configured in different ways. It can be chosen to have a 1-step only backup heater or a backup heater with 2 steps. If 2 steps, the capacity of the second step depends on this setting. It can also be chosen to have a higher capacity of the second step in emergency.

#	Code	Description
[9.3.3]	[4-0A]	▪ 0: Relay 1 ▪ 1: Relay 1 / Relay 1+2(a) ▪ 2: Relay 1 / Relay 2(a) ▪ 3: Relay 1 / Relay 2 Emergency Relay 1+2(a)

(a) Not available for 3V models.

INFORMATION

Settings [9.3.3] and [9.3.5] are linked. Changing one setting influences the other. If you change one, check if the other is still as expected.

INFORMATION

During normal operation, the capacity of the second step of the backup heater at nominal voltage is equal to [6-03]+[6-04].

INFORMATION

If [4-0A]=3 and emergency mode is active, the power usage of the backup heater is maximal and equal to 2×[6-03]+[6-04].

INFORMATION

Only for systems with integrated domestic hot water tank: If the storage temperature setpoint is higher than 50°C, Daikin recommends NOT to disable the backup heater second step because it will have a big impact on the required time for the unit to heat up the domestic hot water tank.

Capacity step 1

#	Code	Description
[9.3.4]	[6-03]	▪ The capacity of the first step of the backup heater at nominal voltage.

Additional capacity step 2

#	Code	Description
[9.3.5]	[6-04]	▪ The capacity difference between the second and first step of the backup heater at nominal voltage. Nominal value depends on backup heater configuration.

Equilibrium

#	Code	Description
[9.3.6]	[5-00]	`Equilibrium`: Is backup heater operation allowed above equilibrium temperature during space heating operation? ▪ 1: NOT allowed ▪ 0: Allowed
[9.3.7]	[5-01]	`Equilibrium temperature`: Outdoor temperature below which operation of the backup heater is allowed. Range: –15°C~35°C

Operation

#	Code	Description
[9.3.8]	[4-00]	Backup heater operation: ▪ 0: `Restricted` ▪ 1: `Allowed` ▪ 2: `Only DHW` Backup heater operation is enabled for domestic hot water and disabled for space heating.

INFORMATION

Only for systems with integrated domestic hot water tank: If backup heater operation during space heating needs to be limited but can be allowed for domestic hot water operation, then set [4-00] to 2.

Emergency

Emergency

When the heat pump fails to operate, the backup heater can serve as an emergency heater. It then takes over the heat load either automatically or by manual interaction.

- When `Emergency` is set to `Automatic` and a heat pump failure occurs, the backup heater automatically takes over the domestic hot water production and space heating.

- When `Emergency` is set to `Manual` and a heat pump failure occurs, the domestic hot water heating and space heating stops.
  To manually recover it via the user interface, go to the `Malfunctioning` main menu screen and confirm whether the backup heater can take over the heat load or not.
- Alternatively, when `Emergency` is set to:
  - `auto SH reduced/DHW on`, space heating is reduced but domestic hot water is still available.
  - `auto SH reduced/DHW off`, space heating is reduced and domestic hot water is NOT available.
  - `auto SH normal/DHW off`, space heating operates as normally but domestic hot water is NOT available.

  Similarly as in `Manual` mode, the unit can take the full load with the backup heater if the user activates this via the `Malfunctioning` main menu screen.

To keep energy consumption low, we recommend to set `Emergency` to `auto SH reduced/DHW off` if the house is unattended for longer periods.

#	Code	Description
[9.5.1]	[4-06]	▪ 0: `Manual` ▪ 1: `Automatic` ▪ 2: `auto SH reduced/DHW on` ▪ 3: `auto SH reduced/DHW off` ▪ 4: `auto SH normal/DHW off`

INFORMATION

The auto emergency setting can be set in the menu structure of the user interface only.

INFORMATION

If a heat pump failure occurs and `Emergency` is set to `Manual`, the room frost protection function, the underfloor heating screed dryout function, and the water pipe antifreeze function will remain active even if the user does NOT confirm emergency operation.

HP forced off

`HP forced off` mode can be activated to allow the backup heater to provide domestic hot water and space heating. Cooling is NOT possible when this mode is activated.

#	Code	Description
[9.5.2]	[7-06]	Activation of the `HP forced off` mode: ▪ 0: `disabled` ▪ 1: `enabled`

Balancing

Priorities

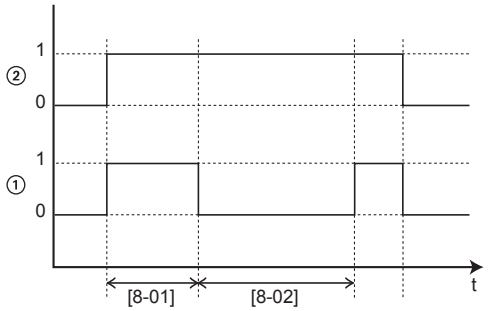
For systems with an integrated domestic hot water tank.

#	Code	Description
[9.6.1]	[5-02]	`Space heating priority`: Defines whether backup heater will assist the heat pump during domestic hot water operation. Enable this function to shorten tank heating operation time and interruption of the space heating cycle. This setting MUST always be 1. [5-01] Equilibrium temperature and [5-03] Space heating priority temperature are related to backup heater. So, you must set [5-03] equal or a few degrees higher than [5-01]. If the backup heater operation is limited ([4-00]=0) and the outdoor temperature is lower than setting [5-03], the domestic hot water will not be heated with the backup heater.
[9.6.2]	[5-03]	`Priority temperature`: Defines the outdoor temperature which below the backup heater will assist during domestic hot water heating.
[9.6.3]	[5-04]	`Offset BSH setpoint`: Setpoint correction for domestic hot water temperature: setpoint correction for the desired domestic hot water temperature, to be applied at low outdoor temperature when space heating priority is enabled. The corrected (higher) setpoint will make sure that the total heat capacity of the water in the tank remains approximately unchanged, by compensating for the colder bottom water layer of the tank (because the heat exchanger coil is not operational) with a warmer top layer. Range: 0°C~20°C

Timers

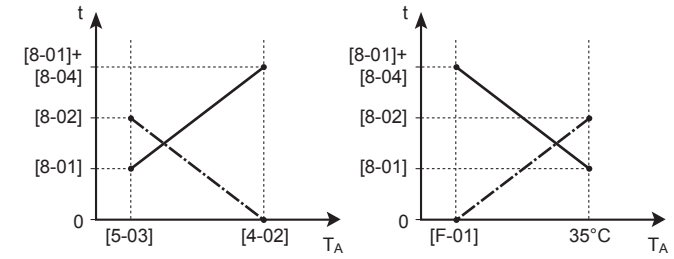
For simultaneous space and domestic hot water operation request.

[8-02]: `Anti-recycle timer`



1 Heat pump domestic water heating mode (1=active, 0=not active)
2 Hot water request for heat pump (1=request, 0=no request)
t Time

[8-04]: `Additional timer` at [4-02]/[F-01]



T_A Ambient (outdoor) temperature
t Time
`Anti-recycle timer`
Maximum running time domestic hot water

#	Code	Description
[9.6.4]	[8-02]	`Anti-recycle timer`: Minimum time between two cycles for domestic hot water. The actual anti-recycling time also depends on setting [8-04]. Range: 0~10 hours **Remark:** The minimum time is 0.5 hours even when the selected value is 0.
[9.6.5]	N/A	`Minimum running timer`: Do NOT change.
[9.6.6]	[8-01]	`Maximum running timer` for domestic hot water operation. Domestic hot water heating stops even when the target domestic hot water temperature is NOT reached. The actual maximum running time also depends on setting [8-04]. ▪ When `Control=Room thermostat`: This preset value is only taken into account if there is a request for space heating or cooling. If there is NO request for space heating/cooling, the tank is heated until the setpoint has been reached. ▪ When `Control≠Room thermostat`: This preset value is always taken into account. Range: 5~95 minutes
[9.6.7]	[8-04]	`Additional timer`: Additional running time for the maximum running time depending on the outdoor temperature [4-02] or [F-01]. Range: 0~95 minutes

Water pipe freeze prevention

Only relevant for installations with water piping outdoors. This function tries to protect outdoor water piping from freezing.

#	Code	Description
[9.7]	[4-04]	`Water pipe freeze prevention`: ▪ 0: `Intermittent` ▪ 1: `Continuous` ▪ 2: `Off`

NOTICE

Water pipe freeze prevention. Even if you turn OFF space heating/cooling operation ([C.2]: `Operation` > `Space heating/cooling`), water pipe freeze prevention –if enabled– will remain active.

Preferential kWh rate power supply

#	Code	Description
[9.8.1]	[D-01]	Connection to a `Benefit kWh power supply` or a `Safety thermostat`: ▪ 0 `No`: The outdoor unit is connected to a normal power supply. ▪ 1 `Open`: The outdoor unit is connected to a preferential kWh rate power supply. When the preferential kWh rate signal is sent by the electricity company, the contact will open and the unit will go in forced off mode. When the signal is released again, the voltage-free contact will close and the unit will restart operation. Therefore, always enable the auto restart function. ▪ 2 `Closed`: The outdoor unit is connected to a preferential kWh rate power supply. When the preferential kWh rate signal is sent by the electricity company, the contact will close and the unit will go in forced off mode. When the signal is released again, the voltage-free contact will open and the unit will restart operation. Therefore, always enable the auto restart function. ▪ 3 `Safety thermostat`: A safety thermostat is connected to the system (normal closed contact)
[9.8.2]	[D-00]	`Allow heater`: Which heaters are allowed to operate during preferential kWh rate power supply? ▪ 0 `No`: None ▪ 1 `Only BSH`: Booster heater only ▪ 2 `Only BUH`: Backup heater only ▪ 3 `All`: All heaters See table below. Setting 2 is only meaningful if the preferential kWh rate power supply is of type 1 or indoor unit is connected to a normal kWh rate power supply (via X2M/5-6) and the backup heater is NOT connected to the preferential kWh rate power supply.
[9.8.3]	[D-05]	`Allow pump`: ▪ 0 `No`: Pump is forced off ▪ 1 `Yes`: No limitation

Do NOT use 1 or 3.

[D-00]	Backup heater	Compressor
0	Forced OFF	Forced OFF
2	Allowed	

Power consumption control

Power consumption control

See "6 Application guidelines" [▶ 29] for detailed information about this functionality.

#	Code	Description
[9.9.1]	[4-08]	`Power consumption control`: ▪ 0 **No**: Disabled. ▪ 1 `Continuous`: Enabled: You can set one power limitation value (in A or kW) to which the system power consumption will be limited for all the time. ▪ 2 `Inputs`: Enabled: You can set up to four different power limitation values (in A or kW) to which the system power consumption will be limited when the corresponding digital input asks.
[9.9.2]	[4-09]	`Type`: ▪ 0 **Amp**: The limitation values are set in A. ▪ 1 **kW**: The limitation values are set in kW.

Limit when [9.9.1]=`Continuous` and [9.9.2]=**Amp**:

#	Code	Description
[9.9.3]	[5-05]	`Limit`: Only applicable in case of full time current limitation mode. 0 A~50 A

Limits when [9.9.1]=`Inputs` and [9.9.2]=**Amp**:

#	Code	Description
[9.9.4]	[5-05]	`Limit 1`: 0 A~50 A
[9.9.5]	[5-06]	`Limit 2`: 0 A~50 A
[9.9.6]	[5-07]	`Limit 3`: 0 A~50 A
[9.9.7]	[5-08]	`Limit 4`: 0 A~50 A

Limit when [9.9.1]=`Continuous` and [9.9.2]=**kW**:

#	Code	Description
[9.9.8]	[5-09]	`Limit`: Only applicable in case of full time power limitation mode. 0 kW~20 kW

Limits when [9.9.1]=`Inputs` and [9.9.2]=**kW**:

#	Code	Description
[9.9.9]	[5-09]	`Limit 1`: 0 kW~20 kW

#	Code	Description
[9.9.A]	[5-0A]	`Limit 2`: 0 kW~20 kW
[9.9.B]	[5-0B]	`Limit 3`: 0 kW~20 kW
[9.9.C]	[5-0C]	`Limit 4`: 0 kW~20 kW

Priority heater

#	Code	Description
[9.9.D]	[4-01]	**Power consumption control DISABLED [4-08]=0** ▪ 0 `None` : Backup heater and booster heater can operate simultaneously. ▪ 1 `Booster heater`: The booster heater is prioritised. ▪ 2 `Backup heater`: The backup heater is prioritised. **Power consumption control ENABLED [4-08]=1/2** ▪ 0 `None` : Depending on the power limitation level, the booster heater will be limited first, before the backup heater is limited. ▪ 1 `Booster heater`: Depending on the power limitation level, the backup heater will be limited first, before the booster heater is limited. ▪ 2 `Backup heater`: Depending on the power limitation level, the booster heater will be limited first, before the backup heater is limited.

Note: In case power consumption control is DISABLED (for all models) the setting [4-01] defines whether backup heater and booster heater can operate simultaneously, or if the booster heater/backup heater has priority over the backup heater/booster heater.

In case power consumption control is ENABLED, the setting [4-01] defines the priority of the electrical heaters depending on applicable limitation.

Energy metering

Energy metering

If energy metering is performed by the use of external power meters, configure the settings as described below. Select the pulse frequency output of each power meter in accordance with the power meter specifications. It is possible to connect up to 2 power meters with different pulse frequencies. If only 1 or no power meter is used, select '`None`' to indicate the corresponding pulse input is NOT used.

#	Code	Description
[9.A.1]	[D-08]	`Electricity meter 1`: ▪ 0 `None`: NOT installed ▪ 1 `1/10kWh`: Installed ▪ 2 `1/kWh`: Installed ▪ 3 `10/kWh`: Installed ▪ 4 `100/kWh`: Installed ▪ 5 `1000/kWh`: Installed
[9.A.2]	[D-09]	`Electricity meter 2`: ▪ 0 `None`: NOT installed ▪ 1 `1/10kWh`: Installed ▪ 2 `1/kWh`: Installed ▪ 3 `10/kWh`: Installed ▪ 4 `100/kWh`: Installed ▪ 5 `1000/kWh`: Installed

Sensors

External sensor

#	Code	Description
[9.B.1]	[C–08]	`External sensor`: When an optional external ambient sensor is connected, the type of the sensor must be set. ▪ 0 `None` : NOT installed. The thermistor in the user interface and in the outdoor unit are used for measurement. ▪ 1 `Outdoor`: Connected to PCB of the indoor unit measuring the **outdoor temperature**. **Remark:** For some functionality, the temperature sensor in the outdoor unit is still used. ▪ 2 `Room`: Connected to PCB of the indoor unit measuring the **indoor temperature**. The temperature sensor in the user interface is NOT used anymore. **Remark:** This value has only meaning in room thermostat control.

Ext. amb. sensor offset

ONLY applicable in case an external outdoor ambient sensor is connected and configured.

You can calibrate the external outdoor ambient temperature sensor. It is possible to give an offset to the thermistor value. This setting can be used to compensate for situations where the external outdoor ambient sensor cannot be installed on the ideal installation location.

#	Code	Description
[9.B.2]	[2-0B]	`Ext. amb. sensor offset`: Offset on the ambient temperature measured on the external outdoor temperature sensor. ▪ –5°C~5°C, step 0.5°C

Averaging time

The average timer corrects the influence of ambient temperature variations. The weather-dependent setpoint calculation is done on the average outdoor temperature.

The outdoor temperature is averaged over the selected time period.

#	Code	Description
[9.B.3]	[1-0A]	`Averaging time`: ▪ 0: No averaging ▪ 1: 12 hours ▪ 2: 24 hours ▪ 3: 48 hours ▪ 4: 72 hours

Bivalent

Bivalent

Only applicable in case of auxiliary boiler.

About bivalent

The purpose of this function is to determine which heating source can/will provide the space heating, either the heat pump system or the auxiliary boiler.

#	Code	Description
[9.C.1]	[C-02]	`Bivalent`: Indicates if the space heating is also performed by means of another heat source than the system. ▪ 0 **No**: Not installed ▪ 1 `Yes`: Installed. The auxiliary boiler (gas boiler, oil burner) will operate when the outdoor ambient temperature is low. During bivalent operation, the heat pump is turned off. Set this value in case an auxiliary boiler is used.

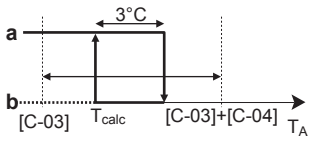
- If `Bivalent` is enabled: When the outdoor temperature drops below the bivalent ON temperature (fixed or variable based on energy prices), the space heating by the heat pump stops automatically and the permission signal for the auxiliary boiler is active.
- If `Bivalent` is disabled: Space heating is only done by the heat pump within the operation range. The permission signal for the auxiliary boiler is always inactive.

The switch-over between the heat pump system and the auxiliary boiler is based on the following settings:

- [C-03] and [C-04]
- Electricity and gas prices ([7.5.1], [7.5.2], [7.5.3], and [7.6])

[C-03], [C-04], and T_{calc}

Based on the settings above, the heat pump system calculates a value T_{calc}, which is variable between [C-03] and [C-03]+[C-04].

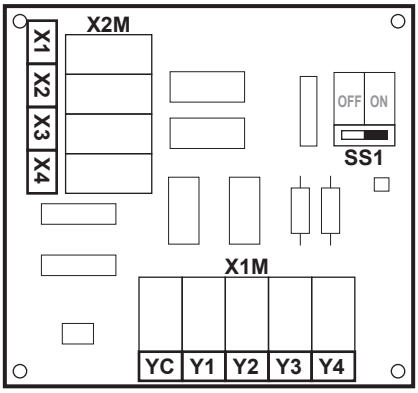


T_A Outdoor temperature
T_{calc} Bivalent ON temperature (variable). Below this temperature, the auxiliary boiler will always be ON. T_{calc} can never go below [C-03] or above [C-03]+[C-04].
3°C Fixed hysteresis to prevent too much switching between heat pump system and auxiliary boiler
a Auxiliary boiler active
b Auxiliary boiler inactive

If the outdoor temperature…	Then…	
	Space heating by the heat pump system…	Bivalent signal for the auxiliary boiler is…
Drops below T_{calc}	Stops	Active
Rises above T_{calc}+3°C	Starts	Inactive

INFORMATION

- The bivalent operation function has no impact on the domestic water heating mode. The domestic hot water is still and only heated by the heat pump.
- The permission signal for the auxiliary boiler is located on the EKRP1HBAA (digital I/O PCB). When it is activated, the contact X1, X2 is closed and open when it is deactivated. See illustration below for the schematic location of this contact.



#	Code	Description
9.C.3	[C-03]	Range: –25°C~25°C (step: 1°C)
9.C.4	[C-04]	Range: 2°C~10°C (step: 1°C) The higher the value of [C-04], the higher the accuracy of the switch-over between the heat pump system and the auxiliary boiler.

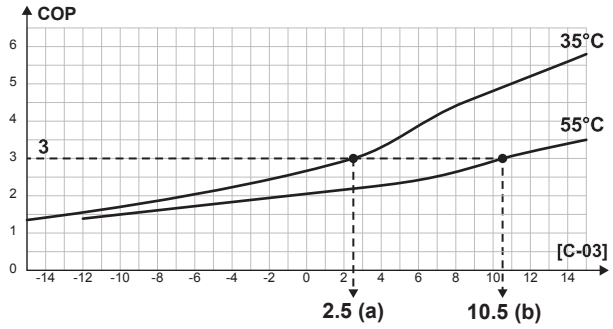
To determine the value of [C-03], proceed as follows:

1 Determine the COP (= coefficient of performance) using the formula:

Formula	Example
COP = (Electricity price / gas price)[a] × boiler efficiency	If: ▪ Electricity price: 20 c€/kWh ▪ Gas price: 6 c€/kWh ▪ Boiler efficiency: 0.9 Then: COP = (20/6)×0.9 = **3**

[a] Make sure to use the same units of measurement for the electricity price and gas price (example: both c€/kWh).

2 Determine the value of [C-03] using the graph. For an example, see the table legend.



a [C-03]=2.5 in case of COP=3 and LWT=35°C
b [C-03]=10.5 in case of COP=3 and LWT=55°C

NOTICE

Make sure to set the value of [5-01] at least 1°C higher than the value of [C-03].

Electricity and gas prices

INFORMATION

To set electricity and gas price values, do NOT use overview settings. Set them in the menu structure instead ([7.5.1], [7.5.2], [7.5.3], and [7.6]). For more information on how to set the energy prices, see the operation manual and the user reference guide.

INFORMATION

Solar panels. If solar panels are used, set the electricity price value very low to promote the use of the heat pump.

#	Code	Description
[7.5.1]	N/A	User settings > Electricity price > High
[7.5.2]	N/A	User settings > Electricity price > Medium
[7.5.3]	N/A	User settings > Electricity price > Low
[7.6]	N/A	User settings > Gas price

Alarm output

Alarm output

#	Code	Description
[9.D]	[C–09]	`Alarm output`: Indicates the logic of the alarm output on the digital I/O PCB during malfunctioning. ▪ 0 `Abnormal`: The alarm output will be powered when an alarm occurs. By setting this value, a distinction is made between the detection of an alarm, and the detection of a power failure. ▪ 1 `Normal`: The alarm output will NOT be powered when an alarm occurs. See also table below (Alarm output logic).

Alarm output logic

[C-09]	Alarm	No alarm	No power supply to unit
0	Closed output	Open output	Open output
1	Open output	Closed output	

Auto restart

Auto restart

When power returns after a power supply failure, the auto restart function reapplies the user interface settings at the time of the power failure. Therefore, it is recommended to always enable the function.

If the preferential kWh rate power supply is of the type that power supply is interrupted, always enable the auto restart function. Continuous indoor unit control can be guaranteed independent of the preferential kWh rate power supply status, by connecting the indoor unit to a separate normal kWh rate power supply.

#	Code	Description
[9.E]	[3-00]	`Auto restart`: ▪ 0: `Manual` ▪ 1: `Automatic`

Power saving function

Power saving function

Defines whether the outdoor unit power supply can be interrupted (internally by indoor unit control) during stand-still conditions (no space heating/cooling nor domestic hot water demand). The final decision to allow power interruption of the outdoor unit during standstill depends on the ambient temperature, compressor conditions and minimum internal timers.

To enable the power saving function setting, [E-08] needs to be enabled on the user interface.

#	Code	Description
[9.F]	[E-08]	`Power saving function` for outdoor unit: ▪ 0: `No` ▪ 1: `Yes`

Disable protections

INFORMATION

Protective functions – "Installer-on-site mode". The software is equipped with protective functions, such as room antifrost. The unit automatically runs these functions when necessary.

During installation or service this behaviour is undesired. Therefore, the protective functions can be disabled:

- **At first power-on:** The protective functions are disabled by default. After 36 h they will be automatically enabled.
- **Afterwards:** An installer can manually disable the protective functions by setting [9.G]: `Disable protections`=`Yes`. After his work is done, he can enable the protective functions by setting [9.G]: `Disable protections`=`No`.

#	Code	Description
[9.G]	N/A	`Disable protections`: ▪ 0: `No` ▪ 1: `Yes`

Forced defrost

Forced defrost

Manually start a defrost operation.

#	Code	Description
[9.H]	N/A	Do you want to start a defrost operation? ▪ `Back` ▪ `OK`

NOTICE

Forced defrost start-up. You can only start forced defrost when the heating operation has been running for a while.

Overview field settings

All settings can be done using the menu structure. If for any reason it is required to change a setting using the overview settings, then the overview settings can be accessed in the field settings overview [9.I]. See "To modify an overview setting" [▸ 128].

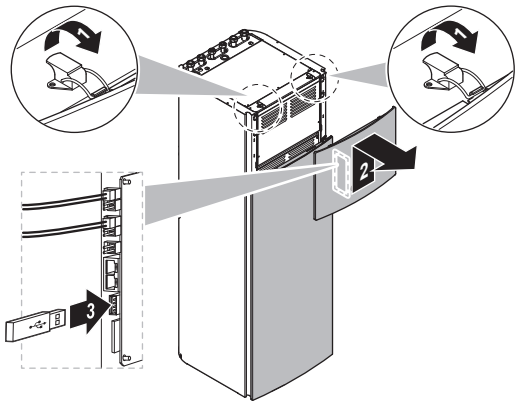
Export MMI settings

About exporting the configuration settings

Export the configuration settings of the unit to a USB memory stick, via the MMI (the user interface of the indoor unit). When troubleshooting, these settings can be provided to our Service department.

#	Code	Description
[9.N]	N/A	`Your MMI settings will be exported to the connected storage device`: ▪ `Back` ▪ `OK`

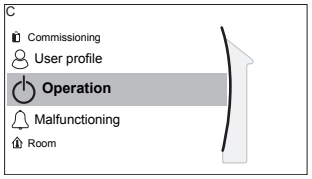
To export MMI settings

1	Open the user interface panel and insert a USB memory stick. 	—
2	On the user interface, go to [9.N] `Export MMI settings`.	
3	Select **OK**.	
4	Remove the USB memory stick and close the user interface panel.	—

10.5.10 Operation

Overview

The following items are listed in the submenu:



[C] `Operation`
[C.1] `Room`
[C.2] `Space heating/cooling`
[C.3] `Tank`

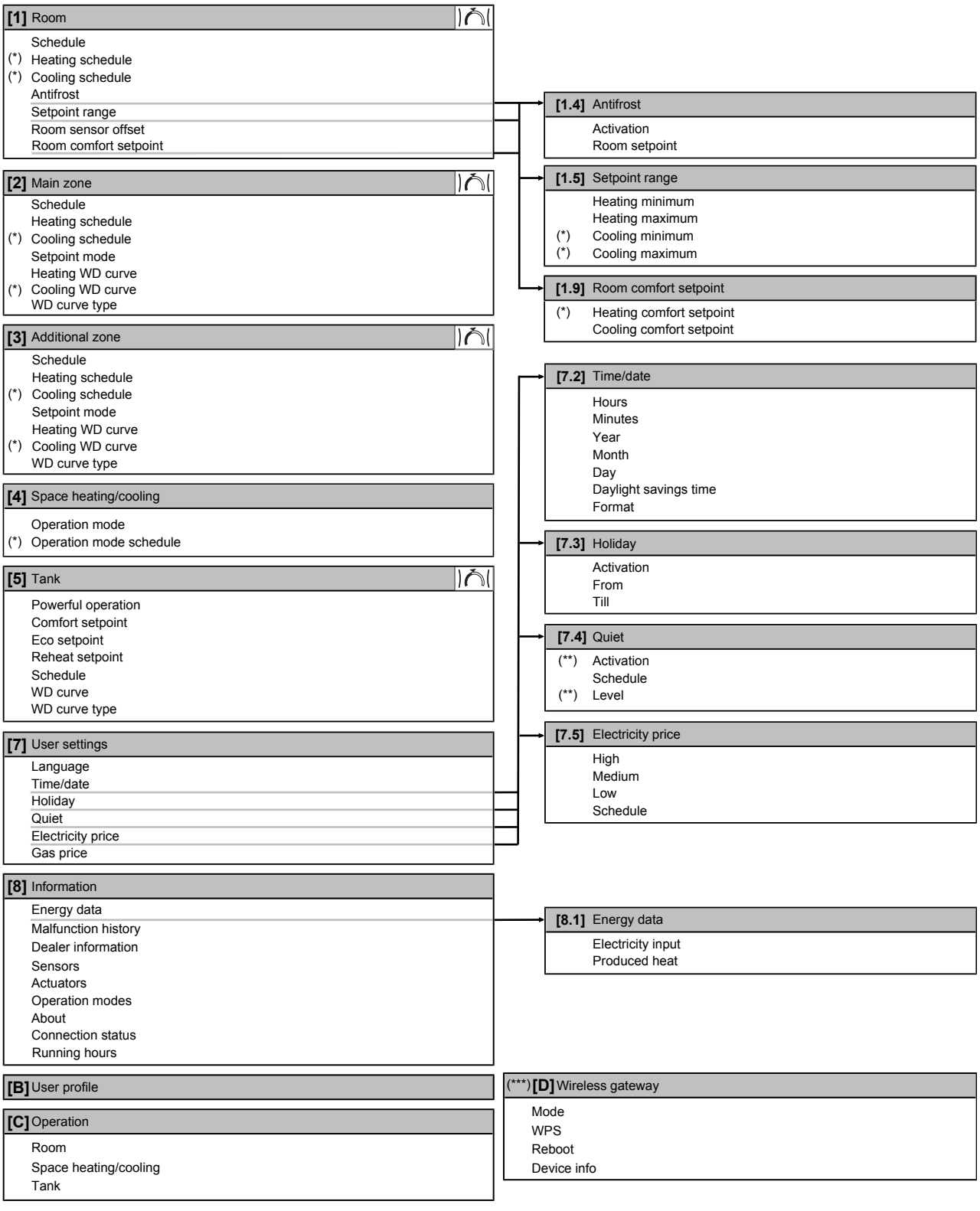
To enable or disable functionalities

In the operation menu, you can separately enable or disable functionalities of the unit.

#	Code	Description
[C.1]	N/A	`Room`: ▪ 0: `Off` ▪ 1: `On`
[C.2]	N/A	`Space heating/cooling`: ▪ 0: `Off` ▪ 1: `On`

#	Code	Description
[C.3]	N/A	Tank: ▪ 0: Off ▪ 1: On

10.6 Menu structure: Overview user settings



Setpoint screen

(*) Only applicable for reversible models, or heating only models + conversion kit

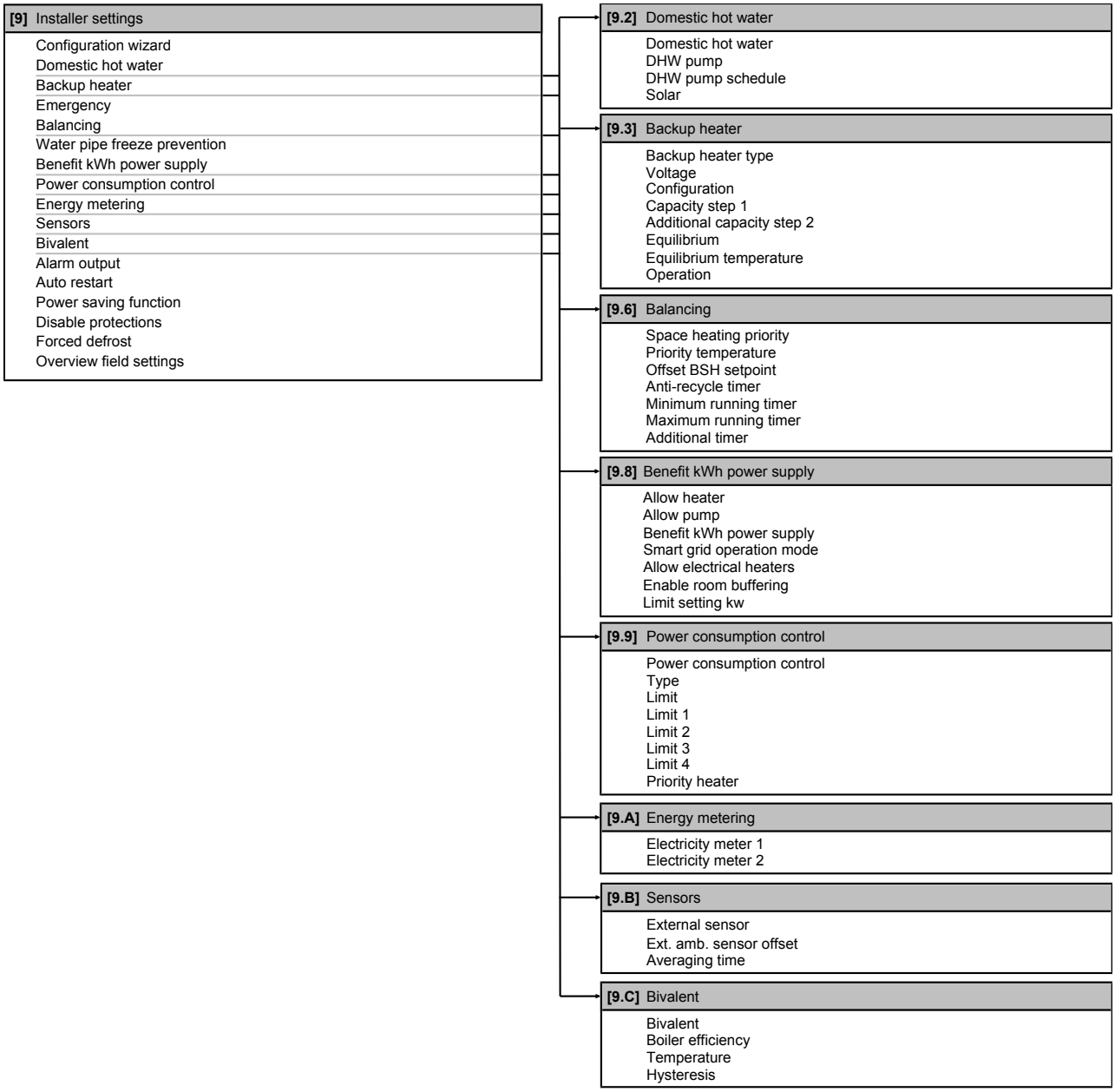
(**) Only accessible by installer

(***) Only applicable when WLAN adapter module is installed

INFORMATION

Depending on the selected installer settings and unit type, settings will be visible/ invisible.

10.7 Menu structure: Overview installer settings



INFORMATION

Solar kit settings are shown but are NOT applicable for this unit. Settings shall NOT be used or changed.

INFORMATION

Depending on the selected installer settings and unit type, settings will be visible/ invisible.

11 Commissioning

NOTICE

General commissioning checklist. Next to the commissioning instructions in this chapter, a general commissioning checklist is also available on the Daikin Business Portal (authentication required).

The general commissioning checklist is complementary to the instructions in this chapter and can be used as a guideline and reporting template during the commissioning and hand-over to the user.

INFORMATION

Protective functions – "Installer-on-site mode". The software is equipped with protective functions, such as room antifrost. The unit automatically runs these functions when necessary.

During installation or service this behaviour is undesired. Therefore, the protective functions can be disabled:

- **At first power-on:** The protective functions are disabled by default. After 36 h they will be automatically enabled.
- **Afterwards:** An installer can manually disable the protective functions by setting [9.G]: `Disable protections`=`Yes`. After his work is done, he can enable the protective functions by setting [9.G]: `Disable protections`=`No`.

In this chapter

11.1 Overview: Commissioning

This chapter describes what you have to do and know to commission the system after it is installed and configured.

Typical workflow

Commissioning typically consists of the following stages:

1. Checking the "Checklist before commissioning".
2. Performing an air purge.
3. Performing a test run for the system.
4. If necessary, performing a test run for one or more actuators.
5. If necessary, performing an underfloor heating screed dryout.

11.2 Precautions when commissioning

INFORMATION

During the first running period of the unit, the required power may be higher than stated on the nameplate of the unit. This phenomenon is caused by the compressor, that needs a continuous run time of 50 hours before reaching smooth operation and stable power consumption.

NOTICE

ALWAYS operate the unit with thermistors and/or pressure sensors/switches. If NOT, burning of the compressor might be the result.

NOTICE

ALWAYS complete the refrigerant piping of the unit before operating. If NOT, the compressor will break.

11.3 Checklist before commissioning

After the installation of the unit, first check the items listed below. Once all checks are fulfilled, the unit must be closed. Power-up the unit after it is closed.

☐	You read the complete installation instructions, as described in the **installer reference guide**.
☐	The **indoor unit** is properly mounted.
☐	The **outdoor unit** is properly mounted.
☐	The following **field wiring** has been carried out according to this document and the applicable legislation: ▪ Between the local supply panel and the outdoor unit ▪ Between indoor unit and outdoor unit ▪ Between the local supply panel and the indoor unit ▪ Between the indoor unit and the valves (if applicable) ▪ Between the indoor unit and the room thermostat (if applicable)
☐	The system is properly **earthed** and the earth terminals are tightened.
☐	The **fuses** or locally installed protection devices are installed according to this document, and have NOT been bypassed.
☐	The **power supply voltage** matches the voltage on the identification label of the unit.
☐	There are NO **loose connections** or damaged electrical components in the switch box.
☐	There are NO **damaged components** or **squeezed pipes** on the inside of the indoor and outdoor units.
☐	**Backup heater circuit breaker** F1B (field supply) is turned ON.
☐	There are NO **refrigerant leaks**.
☐	The **refrigerant pipes** (gas and liquid) are thermally insulated.
☐	The correct pipe size is installed and the **pipes** are properly insulated.
☐	There is NO **water leak** inside the indoor unit.

☐	The **shut-off valves** are properly installed and fully open.
☐	The **stop valves** (gas and liquid) on the outdoor unit are fully open.
☐	The **air purge** valve is open (at least 2 turns).
☐	The **pressure relief valve** purges water when opened. Clean water must come out.
☐	The **domestic hot water tank** is filled completely.

11.4 Checklist during commissioning

☐	The **minimum flow rate** during backup heater/defrost operation is guaranteed in all conditions. See "To check the water volume and flow rate" in "8.2 Preparing water piping" [▶ 75].
☐	To perform an **air purge**.
☐	To perform a **test run**.
☐	To perform an **actuator test run**.
☐	**Underfloor screed dryout function** The underfloor screed dryout function is started (if necessary).

11.4.1 Minimum flow rate

Purpose

For a correct operating unit, it is important to check if the minimum flow rate is reached. If needed, modify the bypass valve setting.

Minimum required flow rate
12 l/min

1	Check the hydraulic configuration to find out which space heating loops can be closed by mechanical, electronic, or other valves.	—
2	Close all space heating loops that can be closed.	—
3	Start the pump test run (see "11.4.4 Actuator test run" [▶ 212]).	—
4	Read out the flow rate[a] and modify the bypass valve setting to reach the minimum required flow rate + 2 l/min.	—

[a] During pump test run, the unit can operate below the minimum required flow rate.

11.4.2 Air purge function

Purpose

When commissioning and installing the unit, it is very important to remove all air in the water circuit. When the air purge function is running, the pump operates without actual operation of the unit and the removal of air in the water circuit will start.

NOTICE

Before starting the air purge, open the safety valve and check if the circuit is sufficiently filled with water. Only if water escapes the valve after opening it, you can start the air purge procedure.

Manual or automatic

There are 2 modes for purging air:

- Manual: You can set the pump speed to low or high. You can set the circuit (the position of the 3-way valve) to Space or Tank. Air purge must be performed for both space heating and tank (domestic hot water) circuits.
- Automatic: The unit automatically changes the pump speed and switches the position of the 3-way valve between the space heating and the domestic hot water circuit.

Typical workflow

Purging the air from the system should consist of:

1 Performing a manual air purge
2 Performing an automatic air purge

INFORMATION

Start by performing a manual air purge. When almost all the air is removed, perform an automatic air purge. If necessary, repeat performing the automatic air purge until you are sure that all air is removed from the system. During air purge function, pump speed limitation [9-0D] is NOT applicable.

The air purge function automatically stops after 30 minutes.

INFORMATION

For best results, air purge each loop separately.

To perform a manual air purge

Conditions: Make sure all operation is disabled. Go to [C]: `Operation` and turn off `Room`, `Space heating/cooling` and `Tank` operation.

1	Set the user permission level to `Installer`. See "To change the user permission level" [▶ 127].	—
2	Go to [A.3]: `Commissioning` > `Air purge`.	
3	In the menu, set `Type` = `Manual`.	
4	Select `Start air purge`.	
5	Select **OK** to confirm. **Result:** The air purge starts. It stops automatically when ready.	

6	During manual operation: ▪ You can change the pump speed. ▪ You must change the circuit. To change these settings during the air purge, open the menu and go to [A.3.1.5]: **Settings**.	
	▪ Scroll to **Circuit** and set it to **Space**/**Tank**.	
	▪ Scroll to **Pump speed** and set it to **Low**/**High**.	
7	To stop the air purge manually:	—
	1 Open the menu and go to **Stop air purge**.	
	2 Select **OK** to confirm.	

To perform an automatic air purge

Conditions: Make sure all operation is disabled. Go to [C]: **Operation** and turn off **Room**, **Space heating/cooling** and **Tank** operation.

1	Set the user permission level to **Installer**. See "To change the user permission level" [▸ 127].	—
2	Go to [A.3]: **Commissioning** > **Air purge**.	
3	In the menu, set **Type** = **Automatic**.	
4	Select **Start air purge**.	
5	Select **OK** to confirm. **Result:** The air purge starts. It stops automatically when done.	
6	To stop the air purge manually:	—
	1 In the menu, go to **Stop air purge**.	
	2 Select **OK** to confirm.	

11.4.3 Operation test run

Purpose

Perform test runs on the unit and monitor the leaving water and tank temperatures to check if the unit is working correctly. The following test runs should be made:

- Heating
- Cooling (if applicable)
- Tank

To perform an operation test run

Conditions: Make sure all operation is disabled. Go to [C]: **Operation** and turn off **Room**, **Space heating/cooling** and **Tank** operation.

1	Set the user permission level to **Installer**. See "To change the user permission level" [▸ 127].	—
2	Go to [A.1]: **Commissioning** > **Operation test run**.	

3	Select a test from the list. **Example:** `Heating`.	
4	Select **OK** to confirm. **Result:** The test run starts. It stops automatically when ready (±30 min).	
	To stop the test run manually:	—
	1 In the menu, go to `Stop test run`.	
	2 Select **OK** to confirm.	

INFORMATION

If the outdoor temperature is outside the range of operation, the unit may NOT operate or may NOT deliver the required capacity.

To monitor leaving water and tank temperatures

During test run, the correct operation of the unit can be checked by monitoring its leaving water temperature (heating/cooling mode) and tank temperature (domestic hot water mode).

To monitor the temperatures:

1	In the menu, go to `Sensors`.	
2	Select the temperature information.	

11.4.4 Actuator test run

Purpose

Perform an actuator test run to confirm the operation of the different actuators. For example, when you select **Pump**, a test run of the pump will start.

To perform an actuator test run

Conditions: Make sure all operation is disabled. Go to [C]: `Operation` and turn off `Room`, `Space heating/cooling` and `Tank` operation.

1	Set the user permission level to Installer. See "To change the user permission level" [▶ 127].	—
2	Go to [A.2]: `Commissioning` > `Actuator test run`.	
3	Select a test from the list. **Example:** `Pump`.	
4	Select **OK** to confirm. **Result:** The actuator test run starts. It stops automatically when ready (±30 min).	
	To stop the test run manually:	—
	1 In the menu, go to `Stop test run`.	
	2 Select **OK** to confirm.	

Possible actuator test runs

- `Backup heater 1` test
- `Backup heater 2` test
- `Pump` test

INFORMATION

Make sure that all air is purged before executing the test run. Also avoid disturbances in the water circuit during the test run.

- `Shut off valve` test
- `Diverter valve` test (3-way valve for switching between space heating and tank heating)
- `Bivalent signal` test
- `Alarm output` test
- `C/H signal` test
- `DHW pump` test

11.4.5 Underfloor heating screed dryout

About underfloor heating screed dryout

Purpose

The underfloor heating (UFH) screed dryout function is used for drying out the screed of an underfloor heating system during the construction of the building.

NOTICE

The installer is responsible for:

- contacting the screed manufacturer for the maximum allowed water temperature, to avoid cracking the screed,
- programming the underfloor heating screed dryout schedule according to the initial heating instructions of the screed manufacturer,
- checking the proper functioning of the setup on a regular basis,
- performing the correct program complying with the type of the used screed.

UFH screed dryout before or during installation of outdoor unit

The UFH screed dryout function can be executed without finishing the outdoor installation. In this case, the backup heater will perform the screed dryout and supply the leaving water without heat pump operation.

To program an underfloor heating screed dryout schedule

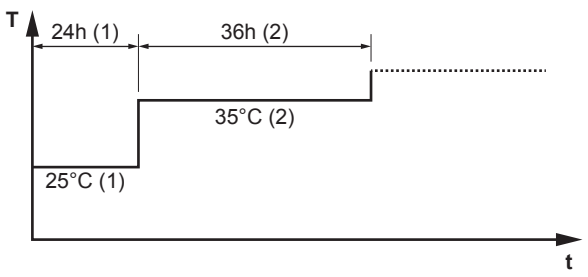
Duration and temperature

The installer can program up to 20 steps. For each step he needs to enter:

1 the duration in hours, up to 72 hours,

2 the desired leaving water temperature, up to 55°C.

Example:



T Desired leaving water temperature (15~55°C)

t Duration (1~72 h)
(1) Action step 1
(2) Action step 2

Steps

1	Set the user permission level to **Installer**. See "To change the user permission level" [▶ 127].	—
2	Go to [A.4.2]: **Commissioning** > **UFH screed dryout** > **Program**.	
3	Program the schedule: To add a new step, select the next empty line and change its value. To delete a step and all steps below it, decrease the duration to "–".	—
	▪ Scroll through the schedule.	
	▪ Adjust the duration (between 1 and 72 hours) and temperatures (between 15°C and 55°C).	
4	Press the left dial to save the schedule.	

To perform an underfloor heating screed dryout

INFORMATION

- If **Emergency** is set to **Manual** ([9.5.1]=0), and the unit is triggered to start emergency operation, the user interface will ask confirmation before starting. The underfloor heating screed dryout function is active even if the user does NOT confirm emergency operation.
- During underfloor heating screed dryout, pump speed limitation [9-0D] is NOT applicable.

NOTICE

To perform an underfloor heating screed dryout, room frost protection needs to be disabled ([2-06]=0). By default, it is enabled ([2-06]=1). However, due to the "installer-on-site" mode (see "Commissioning"), room frost protection will be automatically disabled for 36 hours after the first power-on.

If the screed dryout still needs to be performed after the first 36 hours of power-on, manually disable room frost protection by setting [2-06] to "0", and KEEP it disabled until the screed dryout has finished. Ignoring this notice will result in cracking of the screed.

NOTICE

For the underfloor heating screed dryout to be able to start, make sure the following settings are met:

- [4-00]=1
- [C-02]=0
- [D-01]=0
- [4-08]=0
- [4-01]≠1

Steps

Conditions: An underfloor heating screed dryout schedule has been programmed. See " To program an underfloor heating screed dryout schedule" [▶ 213].

Conditions: Make sure all operation is disabled. Go to [C]: `Operation` and turn off `Room`, `Space heating/cooling` and `Tank` operation.

1	Set the user permission level to `Installer`. See "To change the user permission level" [▶ 127].	—
2	Go to [A.4]: `Commissioning` > `UFH screed dryout`.	
3	Select `Start UFH screed dryout`.	
4	Select **OK** to confirm. **Result:** The underfloor heating screed dryout starts. It stops automatically when done.	
5	To stop the underfloor heating screed dryout manually:	—
	1 Open the menu and go to `Stop UFH screed dryout`.	
	2 Select **OK** to confirm.	

To read out the status of an underfloor heating screed dryout

Conditions: You are performing an underfloor heating screed dryout.

1	Press the back button. **Result:** A graph is displayed, highlighting the current step of the screed dryout schedule, the total remaining time, and the current desired leaving water temperature.	
2	Press the left dial to open the menu structure and to:	
	1 View the status of sensors and actuators.	—
	2 Adjust the current program	—

To stop an underfloor heating (UFH) screed dryout

U3-error

When the program is stopped by an error, an operation switch off, or a power failure, the U3 error will be displayed on the user interface. To resolve the error codes, see "14.4 Solving problems based on error codes" [▶ 231].

Stop UFH screed dryout

To manually stop underfloor heating screed dryout:

1	Go to [A.4.3]: `Commissioning` > `UFH screed dryout`	—
2	Select `Stop UFH screed dryout`.	
3	Select **OK** to confirm. **Result:** The underfloor heating screed dryout is stopped.	

Read out UFH screed dryout status

When the program is stopped due to an error, an operation switch-off, or a power failure, you can read out the underfloor heating screed dryout status:

1	Go to [A.4.3]: `Commissioning` > `UFH screed dryout` > `Status`	
2	You can read out the value here: `Stopped at` + the step where the underfloor screed dryout was stopped.	—

3	Modify and restart the execution of the program[(a)].	—

[(a)] If the UFH screed dryout program was stopped due to a power failure and the power resumes, the program will automatically restart the last implemented step.

12 Hand-over to the user

Once the test run is finished and the unit operates properly, please make sure the following is clear for the user:

- Fill in the installer setting table (in the operation manual) with the actual settings.
- Make sure that the user has the printed documentation and ask him/her to keep it for future reference. Inform the user that he can find the complete documentation at the URL mentioned earlier in this manual.
- Explain the user how to properly operate the system and what to do in case of problems.
- Show the user what to do for the maintenance of the unit.
- Explain the user about energy saving tips as described in the operation manual.

13 Maintenance and service

NOTICE

Maintenance MUST be done by an authorized installer or service agent.

We recommend performing maintenance at least once a year. However, applicable legislation might require shorter maintenance intervals.

NOTICE

Applicable legislation on **fluorinated greenhouse gases** requires that the refrigerant charge of the unit is indicated both in weight and CO_2 equivalent.

Formula to calculate the quantity in CO_2 equivalent tonnes: GWP value of the refrigerant × total refrigerant charge [in kg] / 1000

In this chapter

13.1 Overview: Maintenance and service

This chapter contains information about:

- The yearly maintenance of the outdoor unit
- The yearly maintenance of the indoor unit

13.2 Maintenance safety precautions

DANGER: RISK OF ELECTROCUTION

DANGER: RISK OF BURNING/SCALDING

NOTICE: Risk of electrostatic discharge

Before performing any maintenance or service work, touch a metal part of the unit in order to eliminate static electricity and to protect the PCB.

13.3 Yearly maintenance

13.3.1 Yearly maintenance outdoor unit: overview

Check the following at least once a year:

- Heat exchanger

13.3.2 Yearly maintenance outdoor unit: instructions

Heat exchanger

The heat exchanger of the outdoor unit can get blocked up due to dust, dirt, leaves, etc. It is recommended to clean the heat exchanger yearly. A blocked heat exchanger can lead to too low pressure or too high pressure leading to worse performance.

13.3.3 Yearly maintenance indoor unit: overview

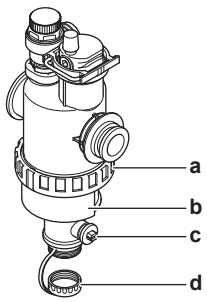
- Water pressure
- Magnetic filter/dirt separator
- Water pressure relief valve
- Relief valve hose
- Pressure relief valve of the domestic hot water tank
- Switch box
- Descaling
- Chemical disinfection

13.3.4 Yearly maintenance indoor unit: instructions

Water pressure

Keep water pressure above 1 bar. If it is lower, add water.

Magnetic filter/dirt separator



a Screw connection
b Magnetic sleeve
c Drain valve
d Drain cap

The yearly maintenance of the magnetic filter/dirt separator consists of:

- Checking if both parts of the magnetic filter/dirt separator are still screwed tight (a).
- Emptying the dirt separator as follows:

1 Take off the magnetic sleeve (b).

2 Unscrew the drain cap (d).

3 Connect a drain hose to the bottom of the water filter so that the water and dirt can be collected in a suitable container (bottle, sink...).

4 Open the drain valve for a couple of seconds (c).

Result: Water and dirt will come out.

5 Close the drain valve.

6 Screw the drain cap back on.

7 Reattach the magnetic sleeve.

8 Check the pressure of the water circuit. If required, add water.

NOTICE

- When checking the magnetic filter/dirt separator for tightness, hold it firmly, so as NOT to apply stress to the water piping.
- Do NOT isolate the magnetic filter/dirt separator by closing the shut-off valves. To properly empty the dirt separator, sufficient pressure is required.
- To prevent dirt from remaining in the dirt separator, ALWAYS take off the magnetic sleeve.
- ALWAYS first unscrew the drain cap, and connect a drain hose to the bottom of the water filter, then open the drain valve.

INFORMATION

For yearly maintenance, you do not have to remove the water filter from the unit to clean it. But in case of trouble with the water filter, you might have to remove it so that you can thoroughly clean it. Then you need to do as follows:

- "13.5.1 To remove the water filter" [▸ 222]
- "13.5.2 To clean the water filter in case of trouble" [▸ 223]
- "13.5.3 To install the water filter" [▸ 224]

Water pressure relief valve

Open the valve and check if it operates correctly. **The water may be very hot!**

Checkpoints are:

- The water flow coming from the relief valve is high enough, no blockage of the valve or in between piping is suspected.
- Dirty water coming out of the relief valve:
  - open the valve until the discharged water does NOT contain dirt anymore
  - flush the system

To make sure this water originates from the tank, check after a tank heat up cycle.

It is recommended to do this maintenance more frequently.

Pressure relief valve hose

Check whether the pressure relief valve hose is positioned appropriately to drain the water. See "7.4.4 To connect the drain hose to the drain" [▸ 72].

Pressure relief valve of the domestic hot water tank (field supply)

Open the valve.

CAUTION

Water coming out of the valve may be very hot.

- Check if nothing blocks the water in the valve or in between piping. The water flow coming from the relief valve must be high enough.
- Check if the water coming out of the relief valve is clean. If it contains debris or dirt:
  - Open the valve until the discharged water does not contain debris or dirt anymore.
  - Flush and clean the complete tank, including the piping between the relief valve and cold water inlet.

To make sure this water originates from the tank, check after a tank heat up cycle.

INFORMATION

It is recommended to perform this maintenance more than once a year.

Switch box

- Carry out a thorough visual inspection of the switch box and look for obvious defects such as loose connections or defective wiring.
- Using an ohmmeter, check if contactors K1M, K2M, K3M and K5M (depending on your installation) operate correctly. All contacts of these contactors must be in open position when the power is turned OFF.

WARNING

If the internal wiring is damaged, it has to be replaced by the manufacturer, its service agent or similarly qualified persons.

Descaling

Depending on water quality and set temperature, scale can deposit on the heat exchanger inside the domestic hot water tank and can restrict heat transfer. For this reason, descaling of the heat exchanger may be required at certain intervals.

Chemical disinfection

If the applicable legislation requires a chemical disinfection in specific situations, involving the domestic hot water tank, please be aware that the domestic hot water tank is a stainless steel cylinder. We recommend to use a non-chloride based disinfectant approved for use with water intended for human consumption.

NOTICE

When using means for descaling or chemical disinfection, it must be ensured that the water quality remains compliant with EU directive 98/83 EC.

13.4 To drain the domestic hot water tank

DANGER: RISK OF BURNING/SCALDING

The water in the tank can be very hot.

Prerequisite: Stop the unit operation via the user interface.

Prerequisite: Turn OFF the respective circuit breaker.

Prerequisite: Close the cold water supply.

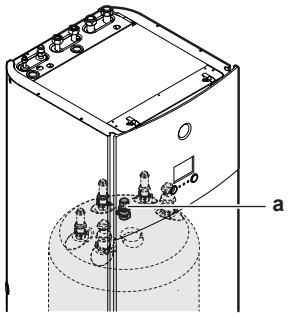
Prerequisite: Open all the hot water tapping points to allow air to enter the system.

1 Remove the top panel, the user interface panel and the front panel.

2 Lower the switch box.

3 Remove the stop from the access point to the tank.

4 Use a drain hose and a pump to drain the tank via the access point.



a Access point to the tank

13.5 About cleaning the water filter in case of trouble

INFORMATION

For yearly maintenance, you do not have to remove the water filter from the unit to clean it. But in case of trouble with the water filter, you might have to remove it so that you can thoroughly clean it. Then you need to do as follows:

- "13.5.1 To remove the water filter" [▸ 222]
- "13.5.2 To clean the water filter in case of trouble" [▸ 223]
- "13.5.3 To install the water filter" [▸ 224]

13.5.1 To remove the water filter

Prerequisite: Stop the unit operation via the user interface.

Prerequisite: Turn OFF the respective circuit breaker.

1 The water filter is located behind the switch box. To get access to it, see:

- "7.2.4 To open the indoor unit" [▸ 61]
- "7.2.5 To lower the switch box on the indoor unit" [▸ 63]

2 Close the stop valves of the water circuit.

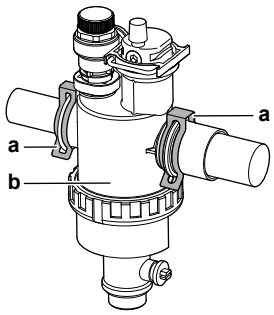
3 Close the valve (if equipped) of the water circuit towards the expansion vessel.

4 Remove the cap on the bottom of the magnetic filter/dirt separator.

5 Connect a drain hose to the bottom of the water filter.

6 Open the valve on the bottom of the water filter to drain water from the water circuit. Collect the drained water in a bottle, sink,... using the installed drain hose.

7 Remove the 2 clips that fix the water filter.



a Clip
b Magnetic filter/dirt separator

8 Remove the water filter.

9 Remove the drain hose from the water filter.

CAUTION

Although the water circuit is drained, some water may be spilled when removing the magnetic filter/dirt separator from the filter housing. ALWAYS clean up spilled water.

13.5.2 To clean the water filter in case of trouble

1 Remove the water filter from the unit. See "13.5.1 To remove the water filter" [▸ 222].

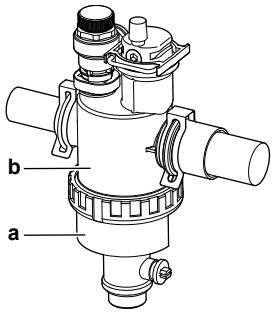
CAUTION

To protect the piping connected to the magnetic filter/dirt separator from damage it is recommended to perform this procedure with the magnetic filter/dirt separator removed from the unit.

2 Unscrew the bottom of the water filter housing. Use an appropriate tool if needed.

CAUTION

Opening the magnetic filter/dirt separator is ONLY required in case of severe issues. Preferably this action is never to be done during the complete lifetime of the magnetic filter/dirt separator.



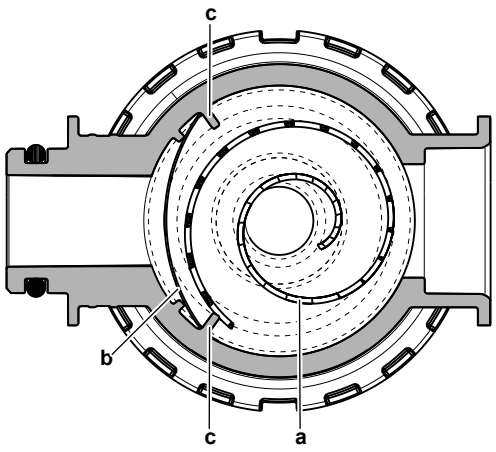
a Bottom part to be unscrewed
b Water filter housing

3 Remove the strainer and the rolled-up filter from the water filter housing and clean with water.

4 Install the cleaned rolled-up filter and strainer in the water filter housing.

INFORMATION

Correctly install the strainer in the magnetic filter/dirt separator housing using the protrusions.



a Rolled-up filter
b Strainer
c Protrusion

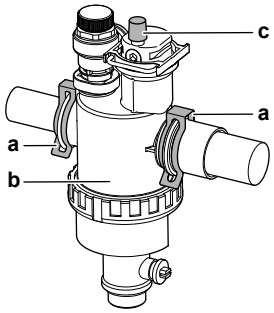
5 Install and properly tighten the bottom of the water filter housing.

13.5.3 To install the water filter

CAUTION

Check the condition of the O-rings and replace if needed. Apply water to the O-rings before installation.

1 Install the water filter in the correct location.



a Clip
b Magnetic filter/dirt separator
c Air purge valve

2 Install the 2 clips to fix the water filter to the water circuit pipes.

3 Make sure that the air purge valve of the water filter is in the open position.

4 Open the valve (if equipped) of the water circuit towards the expansion vessel.

CAUTION

Make sure to open the valve (if equipped) towards the expansion vessel, otherwise the overpressure will be generated.

5 Open the stop valves and add water to the water circuit if needed.

14 Troubleshooting

Contact

For the symptoms listed below, you can try to solve the problem yourself. For any other problem, contact your installer. You can find the contact/helpdesk number via the user interface.

1	Go to [8.3]: `Information` > `Dealer information`.	

In this chapter

14.1 Overview: Troubleshooting

This chapter describes what you have to do in case of problems.

It contains information about:

- Solving problems based on symptoms
- Solving problems based on error codes

Before troubleshooting

Carry out a thorough visual inspection of the unit and look for obvious defects such as loose connections or defective wiring.

14.2 Precautions when troubleshooting

WARNING

- When carrying out an inspection on the switch box of the unit, ALWAYS make sure that the unit is disconnected from the mains. Turn off the respective circuit breaker.
- When a safety device was activated, stop the unit and find out why the safety device was activated before resetting it. NEVER shunt safety devices or change their values to a value other than the factory default setting. If you are unable to find the cause of the problem, call your dealer.

DANGER: RISK OF ELECTROCUTION

WARNING

Prevent hazards due to inadvertent resetting of the thermal cut-out: power to this appliance MUST NOT be supplied through an external switching device, such as a timer, or connected to a circuit that is regularly turned ON and OFF by the utility.

DANGER: RISK OF BURNING/SCALDING

14.3 Solving problems based on symptoms

14.3.1 Symptom: The unit is NOT heating or cooling as expected

Possible causes	Corrective action
The temperature setting is NOT correct	Check the temperature setting on the remote controller. Refer to the operation manual.
The water flow is too low	Check and make sure that: ▪ All shut-off valves of the water circuit are completely open. ▪ The water filter is clean. Clean if necessary. ▪ There is no air in the system. Purge air if necessary. You can purge air manually (see " To perform a manual air purge" [▸ 210]) or use the automatic air purge function (see " To perform an automatic air purge" [▸ 211]). ▪ The water pressure is >1 bar. ▪ The expansion vessel is NOT broken. ▪ The valve (if equipped) of the water circuit towards the expansion vessel is open. ▪ The resistance in the water circuit is NOT too high for the pump (see the ESP curve in the "Technical data" chapter). If the problem persists after you have conducted all of the above checks, contact your dealer. In some cases, it is normal that the unit decides to use a low water flow.
The water volume in the installation is too low	Make sure that the water volume in the installation is above the minimum required value (see "8.2.3 To check the water volume and flow rate" [▸ 78]).

14.3.2 Symptom: Hot water does NOT reach the desired temperature

Possible causes	Corrective action
One of the tank temperature sensors is broken.	See the service manual of the unit for the corresponding corrective action.

14.3.3 Symptom: The compressor does NOT start (space heating or domestic water heating)

Possible causes	Corrective action
The compressor cannot start if the water temperature is too low. The unit will use the backup heater to reach the minimum water temperature (12°C), after which the compressor can start.	If the backup heater doesn't start either, check and make sure that: ▪ The power supply to the backup heater is correctly wired. ▪ The backup heater thermal protector is NOT activated. ▪ The backup heater contactors are NOT broken. If the problem persists, contact your dealer.
The preferential kWh rate power supply settings and electrical connections do NOT match	This should match with the connections as explained in: ▪ "9.3.1 To connect the main power supply" [▸ 108] ▪ "9.1.5 About preferential kWh rate power supply" [▸ 101] ▪ "9.1.6 Overview of electrical connections except external actuators" [▸ 101]
The preferential kWh rate signal was sent by the electricity company	In the user interface of the unit, go to [8.5.B] `Information` > `Actuators` > `Forced off contact`. If `Forced off contact` is `On`, the unit is operating under the preferential kWh rate. Wait for the power to return (maximum 2 hours).

14.3.4 Symptom: The system is making gurgling noises after commissioning

Possible cause	Corrective action
There is air in the system.	Purge air from the system.[a]
Various malfunctions.	Check if 🔔 or ⚠ is displayed on the home screen of the user interface. See "14.4.1 To display the help text in case of a malfunction" [▸ 231] for more information about the malfunction.

[a] We recommend to purge air with the air purge function of the unit (to be performed by the installer). If you purge air from the heat emitters or collectors, mind the following:

WARNING

Air purging heat emitters or collectors. Before you purge air from heat emitters or collectors, check if 🔔 or ⚠ is displayed on the home screen of the user interface.

- If not, you can purge air immediately.
- If yes, make sure that the room where you want to purge air is sufficiently ventilated. **Reason:** Refrigerant might leak into the water circuit, and subsequently into the room when you purge air from the heat emitters or collectors.

14.3.5 Symptom: The pump is making noise (cavitation)

Possible causes	Corrective action
There is air in the system	Purge air manually (see " To perform a manual air purge" [▶ 210]) or use the automatic air purge function (see " To perform an automatic air purge" [▶ 211]).
The water pressure at the pump inlet is too low	Check and make sure that: ▪ The water pressure is >1 bar. ▪ The water pressure sensor is not broken. ▪ The expansion vessel is NOT broken. ▪ The valve (if equipped) of the water circuit towards the expansion vessel is open. ▪ The pre-pressure setting of the expansion vessel is correct (see "8.2.4 Changing the pre-pressure of the expansion vessel" [▶ 80]).

14.3.6 Symptom: The pressure relief valve opens

Possible causes	Corrective action
The expansion vessel is broken	Replace the expansion vessel.
The valve (if equipped) of the water circuit towards the expansion vessel is closed.	Open the valve.
The water volume in the installation is too high	Make sure that the water volume in the installation is below the maximum allowed value (see "8.2.3 To check the water volume and flow rate" [▶ 78] and "8.2.4 Changing the pre-pressure of the expansion vessel" [▶ 80]).

Possible causes	Corrective action
The water circuit head is too high	The water circuit head is the difference in height between the indoor unit and the highest point of the water circuit. If the indoor unit is located at the highest point of the installation, the installation height is considered 0 m. The maximum water circuit head is 10 m. Check the installation requirements.

14.3.7 Symptom: The water pressure relief valve leaks

Possible causes	Corrective action
Dirt is blocking the water pressure relief valve outlet	Check whether the pressure relief valve works correctly by turning the red knob on the valve counterclockwise: ▪ If you do NOT hear a clacking sound, contact your dealer. ▪ If the water keeps running out of the unit, close both the water inlet and outlet shut-off valves first and then contact your dealer.

14.3.8 Symptom: The space is NOT sufficiently heated at low outdoor temperatures

Possible causes	Corrective action
The backup heater operation is not activated	Check the following: ▪ The backup heater operation mode is enabled. Go to: [9.3.8]: `Installer settings` > `Backup heater` > `Operation` [4-00] ▪ The backup heater overcurrent circuit breaker is on. If not, turn it back on. ▪ The thermal protector of the backup heater is NOT activated. If it has, check the following, and then press the reset button in the switch box: - The water pressure - Whether there is air in the system - The air purge operation
The backup heater equilibrium temperature has not been configured correctly	Increase the equilibrium temperature to activate the backup heater operation at a higher outdoor temperature. Go to: [9.3.7]: `Installer settings` > `Backup heater` > `Equilibrium temperature` [5-01]

Possible causes	Corrective action
There is air in the system.	Purge air manually or automatically. See the air purge function in the chapter "11 Commissioning" [▶ 207].
Too much heat pump capacity is used for heating domestic hot water	Check if the **Space heating priority** settings have been configured appropriately: ▪ Make sure that the **Space heating priority** has been enabled. Go to [9.6.1]: **Installer settings** > **Balancing** > **Space heating priority** [5-02] ▪ Increase the "space heating priority temperature" to activate backup heater operation at a higher outdoor temperature. Go to [9.6.3]: **Installer settings** > **Balancing** > **Priority temperature** [5-03]

14.3.9 Symptom: The pressure at the tapping point is temporarily unusually high

Possible causes	Corrective action
Failing or blocked pressure relief valve.	▪ Flush and clean the complete tank including the piping between pressure relief valve and the cold water inlet. ▪ Replace the pressure relief valve.

14.3.10 Symptom: Decoration panels are pushed away due to a swollen tank

Possible causes	Corrective action
Failing or blocked pressure relief valve.	Contact your local dealer.

14.3.11 Symptom: Tank disinfection function is NOT completed correctly (AH-error)

Possible causes	Corrective action
The disinfection function was interrupted by domestic hot water tapping	Program the start-up of the disinfection function when the coming 4 hours NO domestic hot water tapping is expected.

Possible causes	Corrective action
Large domestic hot water tapping happened recently before the programmed start-up of the disinfection function	If in [5.6] `Tank` > `Heat up mode` the mode `Reheat only` or `Schedule + reheat` is selected, it is recommended to program the start-up of the disinfection function at least 4 hours later than the last expected large hot water tapping. This start-up can be set by installer settings (disinfection function). If in [5.6] `Tank` > `Heat up mode` the mode `Schedule only` is selected, it is recommended to program a `Eco` action 3 hours before the scheduled start-up of the disinfection function to preheat the tank.
The disinfection operation was stopped manually: [C.3] `Operation` > `Tank` was turned off during disinfection.	Do NOT stop tank operation during disinfection.

14.4 Solving problems based on error codes

If the unit runs into a problem, the user interface displays an error code. It is important to understand the problem and to take measures before resetting an error code. This should be done by a licensed installer or by your local dealer.

This chapter gives you an overview of most possible error codes and their descriptions as they appear on the user interface.

INFORMATION

See the service manual for:

- The complete list of error codes
- A more detailed troubleshooting guideline for each error

14.4.1 To display the help text in case of a malfunction

In case of a malfunction, the following will appear on the home screen depending on the severity:

- 🔔: Error
- ⚠: Malfunction

You can get a short and a long description of the malfunction as follows:

1	Press the left dial to open the main menu and go to `Malfunctioning`. **Result:** A short description of the error and the error code is displayed on the screen.	
2	Press **?** in the error screen. **Result:** A long description of the error is displayed on the screen.	**?**

14.4.2 Error codes: Overview

Error codes of the unit

Error code		Description
7H-01		Water flow problem
7H-04		Water flow problem during domestic hot water production
7H-05		Water flow problem during heating/sampling
7H-06		Water flow problem during cooling/defrost
80-01		Returning water temperature sensor problem
81-00		Leaving water temperature sensor problem
89-01		Heat exchanger frozen (during defrost)
89-02		Heat exchanger frozen (not during defrost)
89-03		Heat exchanger frozen (during defrost)
8F-00		Abnormal increase outlet water temperature (DHW)
8H-00		Abnormal increase outlet water temperature
8H-01		Overheating mixed water circuit
8H-02		Overheating mixed water circuit (thermostat)
8H-03		Overheating water circuit (thermostat)
A1-00		Zero cross detection problem
A5-00		OU: High pressure peak cut / freeze protection problem
AA-01		Backup heater overheated
AC-00		Booster heater overheated
AH-00		Tank disinfection function not completed correctly
AJ-03		Too long DHW heat-up time required
C0-00		Flow sensor malfunction
C4-00		Heat exchanger temperature sensor problem
C5-00		Heat exchanger thermistor abnormality
CJ-02		Room temperature sensor problem
E1-00		OU: PCB defect
E2-00		Leakage current detection error
E3-00		OU: Actuation of high pressure switch (HPS)
E3-24		High pressure switch abnormality
E4-00		Abnormal suction pressure

Error code	Description	
E5-00		OU: Overheat of inverter compressor motor
E6-00		OU: Compressor startup defect
E7-00		OU: Malfunction of outdoor unit fan motor
E8-00		OU: Power input overvoltage
E9-00		Malfunction of electronic expansion valve
EA-00		OU: Cool/heat switchover problem
EC-00		Abnormal increase tank temperature
EC-04		Tank preheating
F3-00		OU: Malfunction of discharge pipe temperature
F6-00		OU: Abnormal high pressure in cooling
FA-00		OU: Abnormal high pressure, actuation of HPS
H0-00		OU: Voltage/current sensor problem
H1-00		External temperature sensor problem
H3-00		OU: Malfunction of high pressure switch (HPS)
H5-00		Malfunction of compressor overload protection
H6-00		OU: Malfunction of position detection sensor
H8-00		OU: Malfunction of compressor input (CT) system
H9-00		OU: Malfunction of outdoor air thermistor
HC-00		Tank temperature sensor problem
HC-01		Second tank temperature sensor problem
HJ-10		Water pressure sensor abnormality
J3-00		OU: Malfunction of discharge pipe thermistor
J6-00		OU: Malfunction of heat exchanger thermistor
J6-07		OU: Malfunction of heat exchanger thermistor
JA-00		OU: Malfunction of high pressure sensor
L1-00		Malfunction of INV PCB
L3-00		OU: Electrical box temperature rise problem
L4-00		OU: Malfunction of inverter radiating fin temperature rise
L5-00		OU: Inverter instantaneous overcurrent (DC)
L8-00		Malfunction triggered by a thermal protection in the inverter PCB
L9-00		Prevention of compressor lock

Error code	Description
LC-00	Malfunction in communication system of outdoor unit
P1-00	Open-phase power supply imbalance
P3-00	Abnormal direct current
P4-00	OU: Malfunction of radiating fin temperature sensor
PJ-00	Capacity setting mismatch
U0-00	OU: Shortage of refrigerant
U1-00	Malfunction by reverse phase/open-phase
U2-00	OU: Defect of power supply voltage
U3-00	Underfloor heating screed dryout function not completed correctly
U4-00	Indoor/outdoor unit communication problem
U5-00	User interface communication problem
U7-00	OU: Transmission malfunction between main CPU-INV CPU
U8-01	Connection with LAN adapter lost
U8-02	Connection with room thermostat lost
U8-03	No connection with room thermostat
U8-04	Unknown USB device
U8-05	File malfunction
U8-07	P1P2 communication error
UA-00	Indoor unit, outdoor unit matching problem
UA-16	Extension/hydro communication problem
UA-17	Tank type problem
UA-21	Extension/hydro mismatch problem
UF-00	Reversed piping or bad communication wiring detection

INFORMATION

In case of error code AH and no interruption of the disinfection function occurred due to domestic hot water tapping, following actions are recommended:

- When the **Reheat only** or **Schedule + reheat** mode is selected, it is recommended to program the start-up of the disinfection function at least 4 hours later than the last expected large hot water tapping. This start-up can be set by installer settings (disinfection function).
- When the **Schedule only** mode is selected, it is recommended to program an **Eco** action 3 hours before the scheduled start-up of the disinfection function to preheat the tank.

NOTICE

When the minimum water flow is lower than described in the table below, the unit will temporarily stop operation and the user interface will display error 7H-01. After some time, this error will reset automatically and the unit will resume operation.

Minimum required flow rate
12 l/min

INFORMATION

Error AJ-03 is reset automatically from the moment there is a normal tank heat-up.

INFORMATION

The user interface will display how to reset an error code.

15 Disposal

NOTICE

Do NOT try to dismantle the system yourself: dismantling of the system, treatment of the refrigerant, oil and other parts MUST comply with applicable legislation. Units MUST be treated at a specialised treatment facility for reuse, recycling and recovery.

In this chapter

15.1 Overview: Disposal

Typical workflow

Disposing of the system typically consists of the following stages:

1 Pumping down the system.
2 Bringing the system to a specialized treatment facility.

INFORMATION

For more details, see the service manual.

15.2 To pump down

Example: To protect the environment, pump down when relocating the unit or when disposing of the unit.

DANGER: RISK OF EXPLOSION

Pump down – Refrigerant leakage. If you want to pump down the system, and there is a leak in the refrigerant circuit:

- Do NOT use the unit's automatic pump down function, with which you can collect all refrigerant from the system into the outdoor unit. **Possible consequence:** Self-combustion and explosion of the compressor because of air going into the operating compressor.
- Use a separate recovery system so that the unit's compressor does NOT have to operate.

NOTICE

During pump down operation, stop the compressor before removing the refrigerant piping. If the compressor is still running and the stop valve is open during pump down, air will be sucked into the system. Compressor breakdown or damage to the system can result due to abnormal pressure in the refrigerant cycle.

Pump down operation will extract all refrigerant from the system into the outdoor unit.

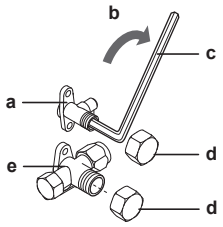
1 Remove the valve lid from the liquid stop valve and the gas stop valve.
2 Install a manifold on the gas stop valve.

3 Carry out the forced cooling operation. See "15.3 To start and stop forced cooling" [▸ 237].

4 After 5 to 10 minutes (after only 1 or 2 minutes in case of very low ambient temperatures (<–10°C)), close the liquid stop valve with a hexagonal wrench.

5 Check on the manifold if the vacuum is reached.

6 After 2-3 minutes, close the gas stop valve and stop forced cooling operation.

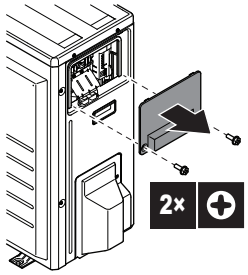


a Liquid stop valve
b Closing direction
c Hexagonal wrench
d Valve lid
e Gas stop valve

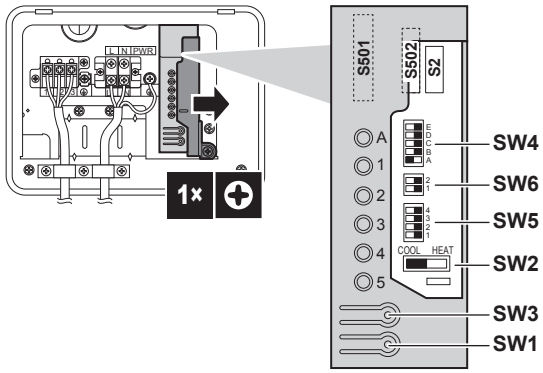
15.3 To start and stop forced cooling

1 Turn OFF the power.

2 Remove the switch box cover.



3 Remove the service PCB cover.



4 Set DIP switches SW5 and SW6 to OFF.

5 Set DIP switch SW2 to COOL.

6 Reattach the service PCB cover.

7 Turn the power back ON. **Proceed with the next step within 3 minutes after restarting.**

8 To start forced cooling, press the forced cooling operation switch SW1.

9 To stop forced cooling, press the forced cooling operation switch SW1 again.

10 Turn OFF the power, remove the switch box cover and service PCB cover and set the DIP switches SW5, SW6 and SW2 back to their original position.

11 Reattach the service PCB cover and switch box cover and turn the power back ON.

NOTICE

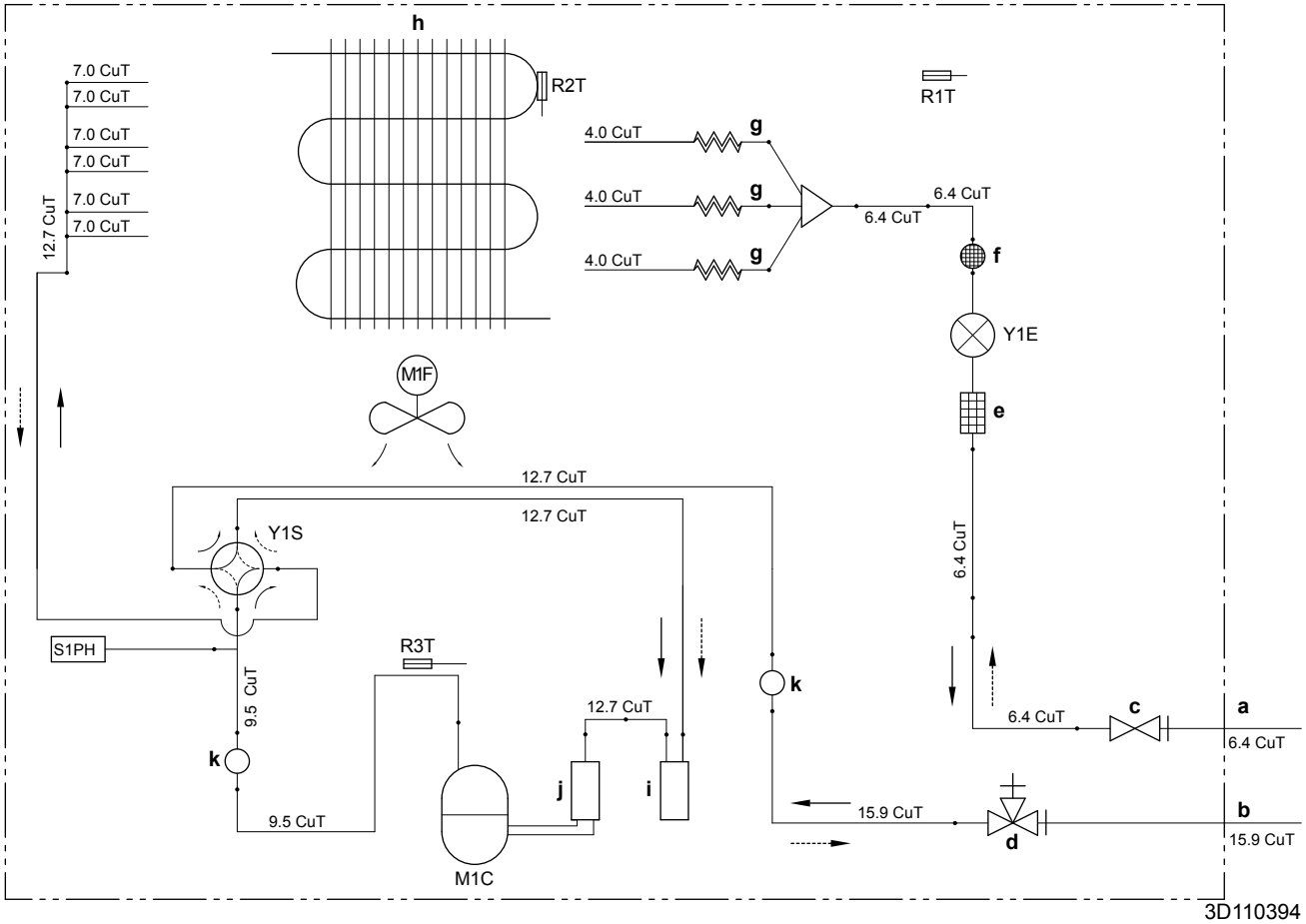
Take care that while running forced cooling operation, the water temperature remains higher than 5°C (see temperature read out of the indoor unit). You can achieve this, for example, by activating all fans of the fan coil units.

16 Technical data

A **subset** of the latest technical data is available on the regional Daikin website (publicly accessible). The **full set** of latest technical data is available on the Daikin Business Portal (authentication required).

In this chapter

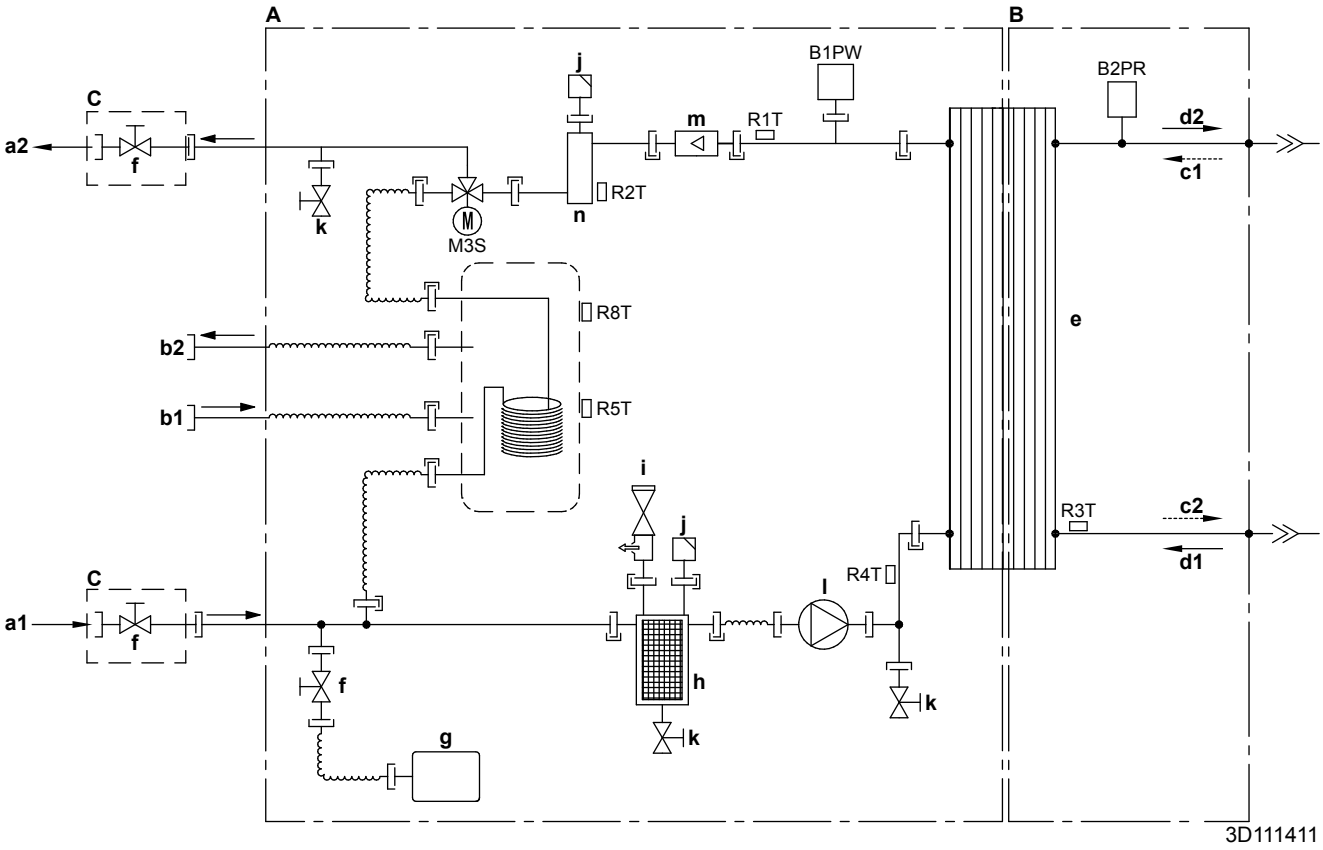
16.1 Piping diagram: Outdoor unit



a Field piping (liquid: Ø6.4 mm flare connection)
b Field piping (gas: Ø15.9 mm flare connection)
c Stop valve (liquid)
d Stop valve with service port (gas)
e Filter
f Muffler with filter
g Capillary tube
h Heat exchanger
i Accumulator
j Compressor accumulator
k Muffler

M1C Compressor
M1F Fan
R1T Thermistor (outdoor air)
R2T Thermistor (heat exchanger)
R3T Thermistor (compressor discharge)
S1PH High pressure switch (automatic reset)
Y1E Electronic expansion valve
Y1S Solenoid valve (4-way valve)(ON: cooling)
Heating
Cooling

16.2 Piping diagram: Indoor unit



A	Water side
B	Refrigerant side
C	Field installed
a1	Space heating water IN
a2	Space heating water OUT
b1	Domestic hot water: cold water IN
b2	Domestic hot water: hot water OUT
c1	Gas refrigerant IN (heating mode; condenser)
c2	Liquid refrigerant OUT (heating mode; condenser)
d1	Liquid refrigerant IN (cooling mode; evaporator)
d2	Gas refrigerant OUT (cooling mode; evaporator)
e	Plate heat exchanger
f	Shut-off valve for service (if equipped)
g	Expansion vessel
h	Magnetic filter/dirt separator
i	Safety valve
j	Air purge
k	Drain valve
l	Pump
m	Flow sensor
n	Backup heater

B1PW	Space heating water pressure sensor
B2PR	Refrigerant pressure sensor
M3S	3-way valve (space heating/domestic hot water)
R1T	Thermistor (heat exchanger – water OUT)
R2T	Thermistor (backup heater – water OUT)
R3T	Thermistor (liquid refrigerant)
R4T	Thermistor (heat exchanger – water IN)
R5T, R8T	Thermistor (tank)
	Screw connection
	Flare connection
	Quick coupling
	Brazed connection

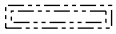
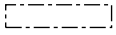
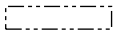
16.3 Wiring diagram: Outdoor unit

See the internal wiring diagram supplied with the unit (on the inside of the top plate). The abbreviations used are listed below.

(1) Connection diagram

English	Translation
Connection diagram	Connection diagram

(2) Notes

English	Translation
Notes	Notes
	Connection
X1M	Main terminal
	Earth wiring
	Field supply
	Option
	Switch box
	PCB
	Wiring depending on model
	Protective earth
	Field wire

NOTES:

1 When operating, do not short-circuit protection device S1PH.

2 Refer to the combination table and the option manual for how to connect the wiring to X6A, X28A and X77A.

3 Colours: BLK: black; RED: red; BLU: blue; WHT: white; GRN: green; YLW: yellow

(3) Legend

AL*		Connector
C*		Capacitor
DB*		Rectifier bridge
DC*		Connector
DP*		Connector
E*		Connector
F1U		Fuse T 6.3 A 250 V
FU1, FU2		Fuse T 3.15 A 250 V
FU3		Fuse T 30 A 250 V
H*		Connector
IPM*		Intelligent power module

L		Connector
LED 1~5		Indication lamp
LED A		Pilot lamp
L*		Reactor
M1C		Compressor motor
M1F		Fan motor
MR*		Magnetic relay
N		Connector
PCB1		Printed circuit board (main)
PS		Switching power supply
Q1L		Thermal protector
Q1DI	#	Earth leakage circuit breaker
Q*		Insulated gate bipolar transistor (IGBT)
R1T		Thermistor (air)
R2T		Thermistor (heat exchanger)
R3T		Thermistor (discharge)
RTH2		Resistor
S		Connector
S1PH		High pressure switch
S2~80		Connector
SA1		Surge arrestor
SHM		Terminal strip fixed plate
U, V, W		Connector
V3, V4, V401		Varistor
X*A		Connector
X*M		Terminal strip
Y1E		Electronic expansion valve
Y1S		Solenoid valve (4-way valve)
Z*C		Noise filter (ferrite core)
Z*F		Noise filter

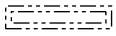
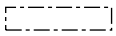
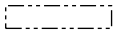
* Optional

Field supply

16.4 Wiring diagram: Indoor unit

See the internal wiring diagram supplied with the unit (on the inside of the indoor unit switch box cover). The abbreviations used are listed below.

Notes to go through before starting the unit

English	Translation
Notes to go through before starting the unit	Notes to go through before starting the unit
X1M	Main terminal
X2M	Field wiring terminal for AC
X5M	Field wiring terminal for DC
X6M	Backup heater power supply terminal
X10M	Smart grid terminal
	Earth wiring
	Field supply
①	Several wiring possibilities
	Option
	Not mounted in switch box
	Wiring depending on model
	PCB
Note 1: Connection point of the power supply for the BUH/BSH should be foreseen outside the unit.	Note 1: Connection point of the power supply for the backup heater/booster heater should be foreseen outside the unit.
Backup heater power supply	Backup heater power supply
☐ 3V (1N~, 230 V, 3 kW)	☐ 3V (1N~, 230 V, 3 kW)
☐ 6T1 (3~, 230 V, 6 kW)	☐ 6T1 (3~, 230 V, 6 kW)
☐ 6V3 (1N~, 230 V, 6 kW)	☐ 6V3 (1N~, 230 V, 6 kW)
☐ 6WN/9WN (3N~, 400 V, 6/9 kW)	☐ 6WN/9WN (3N~, 400 V, 6/9 kW)
User installed options	User installed options
☐ LAN adapter	☐ LAN adapter
☐ Remote user interface	☐ User interface used as room thermostat
☐ Ext. indoor thermistor	☐ External indoor thermistor
☐ Ext outdoor thermistor	☐ External outdoor thermistor
☐ Digital I/O PCB	☐ Digital I/O PCB
☐ Demand PCB	☐ Demand PCB
Safety thermostat	Safety thermostat
Smart Grid	Smart grid
WLAN adapter module	WLAN adapter module

English	Translation
WLAN cartridge	WLAN cartridge
Main LWT	Main leaving water temperature
☐ On/OFF thermostat (wired)	☐ On/OFF thermostat (wired)
☐ On/OFF thermostat (wireless)	☐ On/OFF thermostat (wireless)
☐ Ext. thermistor	☐ External thermistor
☐ Heat pump convector	☐ Heat pump convector
Add LWT	Additional leaving water temperature
☐ On/OFF thermostat (wired)	☐ On/OFF thermostat (wired)
☐ On/OFF thermostat (wireless)	☐ On/OFF thermostat (wireless)
☐ Ext. thermistor	☐ External thermistor
☐ Heat pump convector	☐ Heat pump convector

Position in switch box

English	Translation
Position in switch box	Position in switch box

Legend

A1P		Main PCB
A2P	*	On/OFF thermostat (PC=power circuit)
A3P	*	Heat pump convector
A4P	*	Digital I/O PCB
A8P	*	Demand PCB
A9P		Status indicator
A11P		MMI (= user interface connected to the indoor unit) – Main PCB
A13P	*	LAN adapter
A14P	*	User interface PCB
A15P	*	Receiver PCB (wireless On/OFF thermostat)
A20P	*	WLAN module
B2L		Flow sensor
B1PR		Refrigerant pressure sensor
B1PW		Water pressure sensor
CN* (A4P)	*	Connector
DS1(A8P)	*	DIP switch
E1H		Backup heater element (1 kW)
E2H		Backup heater element (2 kW)
E3H		Backup heater element (3 kW)
E*P (A9P)		Indication LED
F1B	#	Overcurrent fuse backup heater

F1T		Thermal fuse backup heater
F1U, F2U (A4P)	*	Fuse 5 A 250 V for digital I/O PCB
FU1 (A1P)		Fuse T 5 A 250 V for PCB
K1A, K2A	*	High voltage Smart grid relay
K1M, K2M		Contactor backup heater
K5M		Safety contactor backup heater
K*R (A1P-A4P)		Relay on PCB
M1P		Main supply pump
M2P	#	Domestic hot water pump
M2S	#	2-way valve for cooling mode
M3S		3-way valve for floorheating/domestic hot water
P1M		MMI display
PC (A15P)	*	Power circuit
PHC1 (A4P)	*	Optocoupler input circuit
Q1L		Thermal protector backup heater
Q4L	#	Safety thermostat
Q*DI	#	Earth leakage circuit breaker
R1H (A2P)	*	Humidity sensor
R1T (A1P)		Outlet water heat exchanger thermistor
R1T (A2P)	*	Ambient sensor On/OFF thermostat
R1T (A14P)	*	Ambient sensor user interface
R2T (A1P)		Outlet backup heater thermistor
R2T (A2P)	*	External sensor (floor or ambient)
R3T		Refrigerant liquid side thermistor
R4T		Inlet water thermistor
R5T, R8T		Domestic hot water thermistor
R6T	*	External indoor or outdoor ambient thermistor
S1S	#	Preferential kWh rate power supply contact
S2S	#	Electrical meter pulse input 1
S3S	#	Electrical meter pulse input 2
S4S	#	Smart grid feed-in
S6S~S9S	*	Digital power limitation inputs
S10S-S11S	#	Low voltage Smart grid contact
SS1 (A4P)	*	Selector switch
SW1+SW2 (A12P)		Turn buttons
SW3~SW5 (A12P)		Push buttons
TR1		Power supply transformer
X6M	#	Backup heater power supply terminal strip

X10M	*	Smart grid power supply terminal strip
X*, X*A, X*Y, Y*		Connector
X*M		Terminal strip

* Optional

Field supply

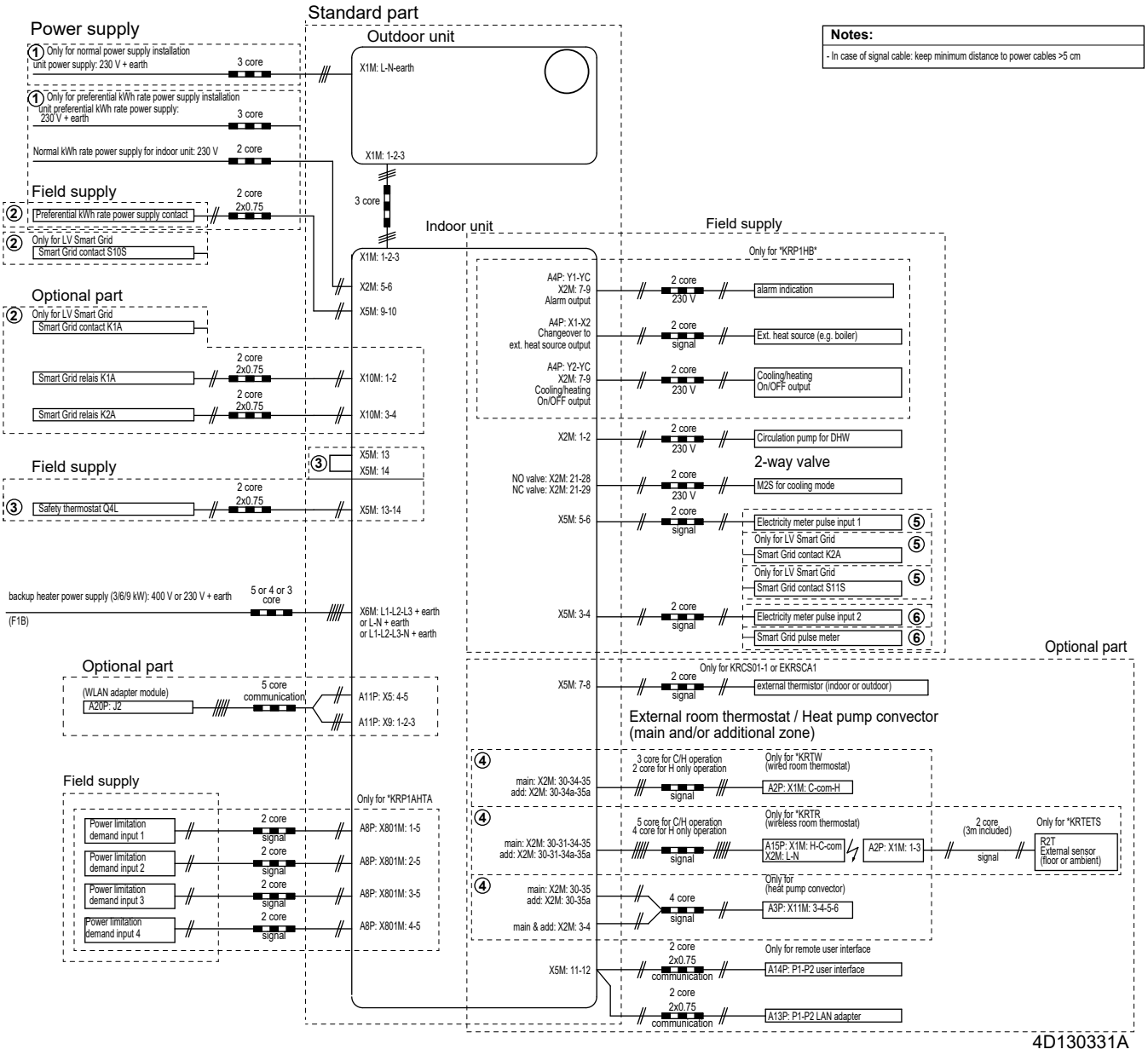
Translation of text on wiring diagram

English	Translation
(1) Main power connection	(1) Main power connection
For preferential kWh rate power supply	For preferential kWh rate power supply
Indoor unit supplied from outdoor	Indoor unit supplied from outdoor
Normal kWh rate power supply	Normal kWh rate power supply
Only for normal power supply (standard)	Only for normal power supply (standard)
Only for preferential kWh rate power supply (outdoor)	Only for preferential kWh rate power supply (outdoor)
Outdoor unit	Outdoor unit
Preferential kWh rate power supply contact: 16 V DC detection (voltage supplied by PCB)	Preferential kWh rate power supply contact: 16 V DC detection (voltage supplied by PCB)
SWB	Switch box
Use normal kWh rate power supply for indoor unit	Use normal kWh rate power supply for indoor unit
(2) Backup heater power supply	(2) Backup heater power supply
Only for ***	Only for ***
(3) User interface	(3) User interface
Only for LAN adapter	Only for the LAN adapter
Only for remote user interface	Only for the user interface used as room thermostat
(5) Ext. thermistor	(5) External thermistor
SWB	Switch box
(6) Field supplied options	(6) Field supplied options
12 V DC pulse detection (voltage supplied by PCB)	12 V DC pulse detection (voltage supplied by PCB)
230 V AC supplied by PCB	230 V AC supplied by PCB
Continuous	Continuous current
DHW pump output	Domestic hot water pump output
DHW pump	Domestic hot water pump
Electrical meters	Electrical meters
For safety thermostat	For safety thermostat
Inrush	Inrush current

English	Translation
Max. load	Maximum load
Normally closed	Normally closed
Normally open	Normally open
Safety thermostat contact: 16 V DC detection (voltage supplied by PCB)	Safety thermostat contact: 16 V DC detection (voltage supplied by PCB)
Shut-off valve	Shut-off valve
SWB	Switch box
(7) Option PCBs	(7) Option PCBs
Alarm output	Alarm output
Changeover to ext. heat source	Changeover to external heat source
Max. load	Maximum load
Min. load	Minimum load
Only for demand PCB option	Only for demand PCB option
Only for digital I/O PCB option	Only for digital I/O PCB option
Options: ext. heat source output, alarm output	Options: external heat source output, alarm output
Options: On/OFF output	Options: On/OFF output
Power limitation digital inputs: 12 V DC / 12 mA detection (voltage supplied by PCB)	Power limitation digital inputs: 12 V DC / 12 mA detection (voltage supplied by PCB)
Space C/H On/OFF output	Space cooling/heating On/OFF output
SWB	Switch box
(8) External On/OFF thermostats and heat pump convector	(8) External On/OFF thermostats and heat pump convector
Additional LWT zone	Additional leaving water temperature zone
Main LWT zone	Main leaving water temperature zone
Only for external sensor (floor/ambient)	Only for external sensor (floor or ambient)
Only for heat pump convector	Only for heat pump convector
Only for wired On/OFF thermostat	Only for wired On/OFF thermostat
Only for wireless On/OFF thermostat	Only for wireless On/OFF thermostat

Electrical connection diagram

For more details, please check the unit wiring.



16.5 Table 1 – Maximum refrigerant charge allowed in a room: indoor unit

A_{room} (m^2)	Maximum refrigerant charge in a room (m_{max}) (kg)
	H=600 mm
1	0.138
2	0.276
3	0.414
4	0.553
5	0.691
6	0.829
7	0.907
8	0.970
9	1.028
10	1.084
11	1.137
12	1.187
13	1.236
14	1.283
15	1.328
16	1.371
17	1.413
18	1.454
19	1.494
20	1.533
21	1.571
22	1.608
23	1.644
24	1.679
25	1.714
26	1.748
27	1.781
28	1.814
29	1.846
30	1.877
31	1.909

INFORMATION

- For floorstanding models, the value of "Installation height (H)" is considered 600 mm to comply to IEC 60335-2-40:2013 A1 2016 Clause GG2.
- For intermediate A_{room} values (i.e. when A_{room} is between two values from the table), consider the value that corresponds to the lower A_{room} value from the table. If A_{room}=12.5 m^2, consider the value that corresponds to "A_{room}=12 m^2".

16.6 Table 2 – Minimum floor area: indoor unit

m_c (kg)	Minimum floor area (m^2)
	H=600 mm
1.84	28.81
1.86	29.44
1.88	30.08
1.90	30.72

INFORMATION

- For floorstanding models, the value of "Installation height (H)" is considered 600 mm to comply to IEC 60335-2-40:2013 A1 2016 Clause GG2.
- For intermediate m_c values (i.e. when m_c is between two values from the table), consider the value that corresponds to the higher m_c value from the table. If m_c=1.87 kg, consider the value that corresponds to "m_c=1.88 kg".
- Systems with a total refrigerant charge (m_c) <1.84 kg (i.e. if the piping length is <27 m) are NOT subjected to any requirements to the installation room.
- Charges >1.9 kg are NOT allowed in the unit.

16.7 Table 3 – Minimum venting opening area for natural ventilation: indoor unit

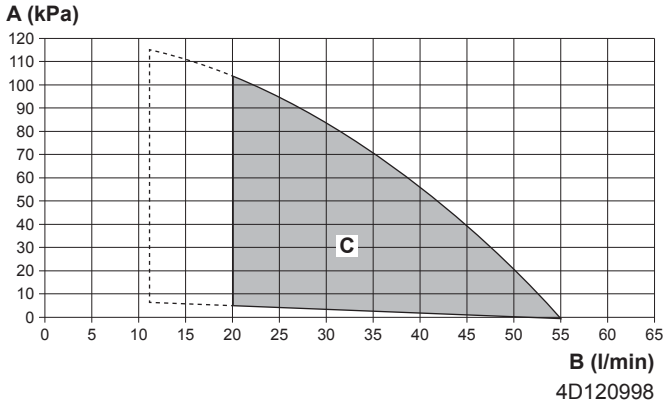
m_c	m_{max}	dm=m_c–m_{max} (kg)	Minimum venting opening area (cm^2)
			H=600 mm
1.9	0.1	1.80	729
1.9	0.3	1.60	648
1.9	0.5	1.40	567
1.9	0.7	1.20	486
1.9	0.9	1.00	418
1.9	1.1	0.80	370
1.9	1.3	0.60	301
1.9	1.5	0.40	216
1.9	1.7	0.20	115

INFORMATION

- For floorstanding models, the value of "Installation height (H)" is considered 600 mm to comply to IEC 60335-2-40:2013 A1 2016 Clause GG2.
- For intermediate dm values (i.e. when dm is between two dm values from the table), consider the value that corresponds to the higher dm value from the table. If dm=1.55 kg, consider the value that corresponds to "dm=1.6 kg".

16.8 ESP curve: Indoor unit

Note: A flow error will occur when the minimum water flow rate is not reached.



A External static pressure in the space heating/cooling circuit
B Water flow rate through the unit in the space heating/cooling circuit
C Operation range

Dashed lines: Operation area is extended to lower flow rates only in case the unit operates with heat pump only. (Not in startup, no backup heater operation, no defrost operation.)

Notes:

- Selecting a flow outside the operating area can damage the unit or cause the unit to malfunction. See also the minimum and maximum allowed water flow range in the technical specifications.
- Water quality must be according to EU directive 98/83 EC.

17 Glossary

Dealer
Sales distributor for the product.

Authorised installer
Technical skilled person who is qualified to install the product.

User
Person who is owner of the product and/or operates the product.

Applicable legislation
All international, European, national and local directives, laws, regulations and/or codes that are relevant and applicable for a certain product or domain.

Service company
Qualified company which can perform or coordinate the required service to the product.

Installation manual
Instruction manual specified for a certain product or application, explaining how to install, configure and maintain it.

Operation manual
Instruction manual specified for a certain product or application, explaining how to operate it.

Maintenance instructions
Instruction manual specified for a certain product or application, which explains (if relevant) how to install, configure, operate and/or maintain the product or application.

Accessories
Labels, manuals, information sheets and equipment that are delivered with the product and that need to be installed according to the instructions in the accompanying documentation.

Optional equipment
Equipment made or approved by Daikin that can be combined with the product according to the instructions in the accompanying documentation.

Field supply
Equipment NOT made by Daikin that can be combined with the product according to the instructions in the accompanying documentation.

Field settings table

[8.7.5] = ... **0221**

Applicable indoor units

EHBX04EA6V
EHBX08EA6V
EHBX08EA9W
EHBH04EA6V
EHBH08EA6V
EHBH08EA9W
EHVX04S18EA3V
EHVX04S18EA6V
EHVX04S23EA3V
EHVX04S23EA6V
EHVX08S18EA6V
EHVX08S18EA9W
EHVX08S23EA6V
EHVX08S23EA9W
EHVX04S18EA6VG
EHVX04S23EA6VG
EHVX08S18EA6VG
EHVX08S23EA6VG
EHVH04S18EA6V
EHVH04S23EA6V
EHVH08S18EA6V
EHVH08S18EA9W
EHVH08S23EA6V
EHVH08S23EA9W
EHVH04S18EJ6V
EHVH04S23EJ6V
EHVH08S18EJ6V
EHVH08S18EJ9W
EHVH08S23EJ6V
EHVH08S23EJ9W
EHVX04S18EJ3V
EHVX04S23EJ3V
EHVX04S18EJ6V
EHVX04S23EJ6V
EHVX08S18EJ6V
EHVX08S23EJ6V
EHVX08S18EJ9W
EHVX08S23EJ9W
EHVH04SU18EA6V
EHVH04SU23EA6V
EHVH08SU18EA6V
EHVH08SU23EA6V

Notes

(*1) *3V
(*2) *6V
(*3) *9W
(*4) EHB*
(*5) EHV*
(*6) *X*
(*7) *H*

Field settings table

Breadcrumb	Field code	Setting name		Range, step **Default value**	Installer setting at variance with default value Date	 Value
Room						
└ Antifrost						
1.4.1	[2-06]	Activation	R/W	0: Disabled **1: Enabled**		
1.4.2	[2-05]	Room setpoint	R/W	4~16°C, step: 1°C **12°C**		
└ Setpoint range						
1.5.1	[3-07]	Heating minimum	R/W	12~18°C, step: 1°C **12°C**		
1.5.2	[3-06]	Heating maximum	R/W	18~30°C, step: 1°C **30°C**		
1.5.3	[3-09]	Cooling minimum	R/W	15~25°C, step: 1°C **15°C**		
1.5.4	[3-08]	Cooling maximum	R/W	25~35°C, step: 1°C **35°C**		
Room						
1.6	[2-09]	Room sensor offset	R/W	-5~5°C, step: 0,5°C **0°C**		
1.7	[2-0A]	Room sensor offset	R/W	-5~5°C, step: 0,5°C **0°C**		
└ Room comfort setpoint						
1.9.1	[9-0A]	Heating comfort setpoint	R/W	[3-07]～[3-06]°C, step: 0,5°C **23°C**		
1.9.2	[9-0B]	Cooling comfort setpoint	R/W	[3-09]～[3-08]°C, step: 0,5°C **23°C**		
Main zone						
2.4		Setpoint mode		0: Fixed 1: WD heating, fixed cooling **2: Weather dependent**		
└ Heating WD curve						
2.5	[1-00]	Low ambient temp. for LWT main zone heating WD curve.	R/W	-40~5°C, step: 1°C **-10°C**		
2.5	[1-01]	High ambient temp. for LWT main zone heating WD curve.	R/W	10~25°C, step: 1°C **15°C**		
2.5	[1-02]	Leaving water value for low ambient temp. for LWT main zone heating WD curve.	R/W	[9-01]~[9-00], step: 1°C **35°C**		
2.5	[1-03]	Leaving water value for high ambient temp. for LWT main zone heating WD curve.	R/W	[9-01]~min(45, [9-00])°C , step: 1°C **25°C**		
└ Cooling WD curve						
2.6	[1-06]	Low ambient temp. for LWT main zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	10~25°C, step: 1°C **20°C**		
2.6	[1-07]	High ambient temp. for LWT main zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	25~43°C, step: 1°C **35°C**		
2.6	[1-08]	Leaving water value for low ambient temp. for LWT main zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	[9-03]~[9-02]°C, step: 1°C **22°C**		
2.6	[1-09]	Leaving water value for high ambient temp. for LWT main zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	[9-03]~[9-02]°C, step: 1°C **18°C**		
Main zone						
2.7	[2-0C]	Emitter type	R/W	**0: Underfloor heating** 1: Fancoil unit 2: Radiator		
└ Setpoint range						
2.8.1	[9-01]	Heating minimum	R/W	15~37°C, step: 1°C **25°C**		
2.8.2	[9-00]	Heating maximum	R/W	[2-0C]=2: 37~65, step: 1°C **55°C** [2-0C]≠2: 37~55, step: 1°C **55°C**		
2.8.3	[9-03]	Cooling minimum	R/W	5~18°C, step: 1°C **5°C**		
2.8.4	[9-02]	Cooling maximum	R/W	18~22°C, step: 1°C **22°C**		
Main zone						
2.9	[C-07]	Control	R/W	**0: LWT control** 1: Ext RT control 2: RT control		
2.A	[C-05]	Thermostat type	R/W	0: - 1: 1 contact **2: 2 contacts**		
└ Delta T						
2.B.1	[1-0B]	Delta T heating	R/W	3~10°C, step: 1°C **5°C**		
2.B.2	[1-0D]	Delta T cooling	R/W	3~10°C, step: 1°C **5°C**		
└ Modulation						
2.C.1	[8-05]	Modulation	R/W	**0: No** 1: Yes		
2.C.2	[8-06]	Max modulation	R/W	0~10°C, step: 1°C **5°C**		
└ Shut off valve						
2.D.1	[F-0B]	During thermo	R/W	**0: No** 1: Yes		
2.D.2	[F-0C]	During cooling	R/W	0: No **1: Yes**		
Additional zone						
3.4		Setpoint mode		0: Fixed 1: WD heating, fixed cooling **2: Weather dependent**		
└ Heating WD curve						
3.5	[0-00]	Leaving water value for high ambient temp. for LWT add zone heating WD curve.	R/W	[9-05]~min(45,[9-06])°C, step: 1°C **35°C**		
3.5	[0-01]	Leaving water value for low ambient temp. for LWT add zone heating WD curve.	R/W	[9-05]~[9-06]°C, step: 1°C **50°C**		
3.5	[0-02]	High ambient temp. for LWT add zone heating WD curve.	R/W	10~25°C, step: 1°C **15°C**		
3.5	[0-03]	Low ambient temp. for LWT add zone heating WD curve.	R/W	-40~5°C, step: 1°C **-10°C**		
└ Cooling WD curve						
3.6	[0-04]	Leaving water value for high ambient temp. for LWT add zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	[9-07]~[9-08]°C, step: 1°C **8°C**		

(*1) *3V_(*2) *6V_
(*3) *9W_(*4) EHB*_
(*5) EHV*_
(*6) *X*_(*7) *H*

(#) Setting is not applicable for this unit.

Field settings table					Installer setting at variance with default value	
Breadcrumb	Field code	Setting name		Range, step **Default value**	Date	Value
3.6	[0-05]	Leaving water value for low ambient temp. for LWT add zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	[9-07]~[9-08]°C, step: 1°C **12°C**		
3.6	[0-06]	High ambient temp. for LWT add zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	25~43°C, step: 1°C **35°C**		
3.6	[0-07]	Low ambient temp. for LWT add zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	10~25°C, step: 1°C **20°C**		
Additional zone						
3.7	[2-0D]	Emitter type	R/W	**0: Underfloor heating** 1: Fancoil unit 2: Radiator		
└ Setpoint range						
3.8.1	[9-05]	Heating minimum	R/W	15~37°C, step: 1°C **25°C**		
3.8.2	[9-06]	Heating maximum	R/W	[2-0D]=2: 37~65, step: 1°C **55°C** [2-0D]≠2: 37~55, step: 1°C **55°C**		
3.8.3	[9-07]	Cooling minimum	R/W	5~18°C, step: 1°C **5°C**		
3.8.4	[9-08]	Cooling maximum	R/W	18~22°C, step: 1°C **22°C**		
Additional zone						
3.A	[C-06]	Thermostat type	R/W	0: - 1: 1 contact **2: 2 contacts**		
└ Delta T						
3.B.1	[1-0C]	Delta T heating	R/W	3~10°C, step: 1°C **5°C**		
3.B.2	[1-0E]	Delta T cooling	R/W	3~10°C, step: 1°C **5°C**		
Space heating / cooling └ Operation range						
4.3.1	[4-02]	Space heating OFF temp	R/W	14~35°C, step: 1°C 2**2°C**		
4.3.2	[F-01]	Space cooling OFF temp	R/W	10~35°C, step: 1°C **20°C**		
Space heating / cooling						
4.4	[7-02]	Number of zones	R/W	**0: 1 LWT zone** 1: 2 LWT zones		
4.5	[F-0D]	Pump operation mode	R/W	0: Continuous **1: Sample** 2: Request		
4.6	[E-02]	Unit type	R/W (*6) R/O (*7)	**0: Reversible (*6)** **1: Heating only (*7)**		
4.7	[9-0D]	Pump limitation	R/W	0~8, step:1 0 : No limitation 1~4 : 50~80% 5~8 : 50~80% during sampling **6**		
Space heating / cooling						
4.9	[F-00]	Pump outside range	R/W	**0: Restricted** 1: Allowed		
4.A	[D-03]	Increase around 0°C	R/W	0: No **1: increase 2°C, span 4°C** 2: increase 4°C, span 4°C 3: increase 2°C, span 8°C 4: increase 4°C, span 8°C		
4.B	[9-04]	Overshoot	R/W	1~4°C, step: 1°C **1°C**		
4.C	[2-06]	Antifrost	R/W	0: Disabled **1: Enabled**		
Tank						
5.2	[6-0A]	Comfort setpoint	R/W	30~[6-0E]°C, step: 1°C **60°C**		
5.3	[6-0B]	Eco setpoint	R/W	30~min(50, [6-0E])°C, step: 1°C **45°C**		
5.4	[6-0C]	Reheat setpoint	R/W	30~min(50, [6-0E])°C, step: 1°C **45°C**		
5.6	[6-0D]	Heat up mode	R/W	0: Reheat only **1: Reheat + sched.** 2: Scheduled only		
└ Disinfection						
5.7.1	[2-01]	Activation	R/W	0: No **1: Yes**		
5.7.2	[2-00]	Operation day	R/W	0: Each day 1: Monday 2: Tuesday 3: Wednesday 4: Thursday **5: Friday** 6: Saturday 7: Sunday		
5.7.3	[2-02]	Start time	R/W	0~23 hour, step: 1 hour **1**		
5.7.4	[2-03]	Tank setpoint	R/W	[E-07]≠1 : 55~75°C, step: 5°C **70°C** [E-07]=1 : 60°C **60°C**		
5.7.5	[2-04]	Duration	R/W	[E-07]≠1: 5~60 min, step: 5 min **10 min** [E-07]=1: 40~60 min, step: 5 min **40 min**		
Tank						
5.8	[6-0E]	Maximum	R/W	(*4) : 40~75°C, step: 1°C **60°C** [E-07]=0 (*4) : 40~80°C, step: 1°C **80°C** [E-07]=5 (*5) : 40~60°C, step: 1°C **60°C**		
5.9	[6-00]	Hysteresis	R/W	2~40°C, step: 1°C **25°C**		

(*1) *3V_(*2) *6V_
(*3) *9W_(*4) EHB*_
(*5) EHV*_
(*6) *X*_(*7) *H*

(#) Setting is not applicable for this unit.

Field settings table					Installer setting at variance with default value	
Breadcrumb	Field code	Setting name		Range, step **Default value**	Date	Value
5.A	[6-08]	Hysteresis	R/W	2~20°C, step: 1°C **10°C**		
5.B		Setpoint mode	R/W	**0: Fixed** 1: Weather dependent		
└ WD curve						
5.C	[0-0B]	Leaving water value for high ambient temp. for DHW WD curve.	R/W	35~[6-0E]°C, step: 1°C **55°C**		
5.C	[0-0C]	Leaving water value for low ambient temp. for DHW WD curve.	R/W	45~[6-0E]°C, step: 1°C **60°C**		
5.C	[0-0D]	High ambient temp. for DHW WD curve.	R/W	10~25°C, step: 1°C **15°C**		
5.C	[0-0E]	Low ambient temp. for DHW WD curve.	R/W	-40~5°C, step: 1°C **-10°C**		
Tank						
5.D	[6-01]	Margin	R/W	0~10°C, step: 1°C **2°C**		
User settings						
└ Quiet						
7.4.1		Activation	R/W	**0: OFF** 1: Quiet 2: More quiet 3: Most quiet 4: Automatic		
└ Electricity price						
7.5.1		High	R/W	0,00~990/kWh **1/kWh**		
7.5.2		Medium	R/W	0,00~990/kWh **1/kWh**		
7.5.3		Low	R/W	0,00~990/kWh **1/kWh**		
User settings						
7.6		Gas price	R/W	0,00~990/kWh 0,00~290/MBtu **1,0/kWh**		
Installer settings						
└ Configuration wizard						
└ System						
9.1	[E-03]	BUH type	R/O	**2: 3V (*1)** **3: 6V (*2)** **4: 9W (*3)**		
9.1	[E-05] [E-06] [E-07]	Domestic hot water	R/W	**0: No DHW (*4)** 2: EKHW (*4) **3: Integrated (*5)** 7: EKHWP (*4)		
9.1	[4-06]	Emergency	R/W	0: Manual 1: Automatic(normal SH/DHW ON) 2: Auto red SH/DHW ON **3: Auto red SH/DHW OFF** 4: SH ON/DHW OFF		
9.1	[7-02]	Number of zones	R/W	**0: Single zone** 1: Dual zone		
└ Backup heater						
9.1	[5-0D]	Voltage	R/W (*2) R/O (*1) (*3)	**0: 230V, 1~ (*1) (*2)** 1: 230V, 3~ (*2) **2: 400V, 3~ (*3)**		
9.1	[4-0A]	Configuration	R/W	**0: 1 (*1)** **1: 1/1+2 (*2) (*3)** 2: 1/2 3: 1/2 + 1/1+2 in emergency		
9.1	[6-03]	Capacity step 1	R/W	0~10kW, step: 0,2kW 2**kW (*2)** **3kW (*1)(*3)**		
9.1	[6-04]	Additional capacity step 2	R/O (*1) R/W (*2) (*3)	0~10kW, step: 0,2kW **0kW (*1)** **4kW (*2)** **6kW (*3)**		
└ Main zone						
9.1	[2-0C]	Emitter type	R/W	**0: Underfloor heating** 1: Fancoil unit 2: Radiator		
9.1	[C-07]	Control	R/W	**0: LWT control** 1: Ext RT control 2: RT control		
9.1		Setpoint mode	R/W	0: Fixed 1: WD heating, fixed cooling **2: Weather dependent**		
9.1		Schedule	R/W	**0: No** 1: Yes		
9.1	[1-00]	Low ambient temp. for LWT main zone heating WD curve.	R/W	-40~5°C, step: 1°C **-10°C**		
9.1	[1-01]	High ambient temp. for LWT main zone heating WD curve.	R/W	10~25°C, step: 1°C **15°C**		
9.1	[1-02]	Leaving water value for low ambient temp. for LWT main zone heating WD curve.	R/W	[9-01]~[9-00], step: 1°C **35°C**		
9.1	[1-03]	Leaving water value for high ambient temp. for LWT main zone heating WD curve.	R/W	[9-01]~min(45, [9-00])°C , step: 1°C **25°C**		
9.1	[1-06]	Low ambient temp. for LWT main zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	10~25°C, step: 1°C **20°C**		
9.1	[1-07]	High ambient temp. for LWT main zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	25~43°C, step: 1°C **35°C**		
9.1	[1-08]	Leaving water value for low ambient temp. for LWT main zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	[9-03]~[9-02]°C, step: 1°C **22°C**		
9.1	[1-09]	Leaving water value for high ambient temp. for LWT main zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	[9-03]~[9-02]°C, step: 1°C **18°C**		
└ Additional zone						
9.1	[2-0D]	Emitter type	R/W	**0: Underfloor heating** 1: Fancoil unit 2: Radiator		
9.1		Setpoint mode	R/W	0: Fixed 1: WD heating, fixed cooling **2: Weather dependent**		
9.1		Schedule	R/W	**0: No** 1: Yes		

(*1) *3V_(*2) *6V_
(*3) *9W_(*4) EHB*_
(*5) EHV*_
(*6) *X*_(*7) *H*

(#) Setting is not applicable for this unit.

Field settings table					Installer setting at variance with default value	
Breadcrumb	Field code	Setting name		Range, step **Default value**	Date	Value
9.1	[0-00]	Leaving water value for high ambient temp. for LWT add zone heating WD curve.	R/W	[9-05]~min(45,[9-06])°C, step: 1°C **35°C**		
9.1	[0-01]	Leaving water value for low ambient temp. for LWT add zone heating WD curve.	R/W	[9-05]~[9-06]°C, step: 1°C **50°C**		
9.1	[0-02]	High ambient temp. for LWT add zone heating WD curve.	R/W	10~25°C, step: 1°C **15°C**		
9.1	[0-03]	Low ambient temp. for LWT add zone heating WD curve.	R/W	-40~5°C, step: 1°C **-10°C**		
9.1	[0-04]	Leaving water value for high ambient temp. for LWT add zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	[9-07]~[9-08]°C, step: 1°C **8°C**		
9.1	[0-05]	Leaving water value for low ambient temp. for LWT add zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	[9-07]~[9-08]°C, step: 1°C **12°C**		
9.1	[0-06]	High ambient temp. for LWT add zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	25~43°C, step: 1°C **35°C**		
9.1	[0-07]	Low ambient temp. for LWT add zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	10~25°C, step: 1°C **20°C**		
	└ Tank					
9.1	[6-0D]	Heat up mode	R/W	0: Reheat only **1: Reheat + sched.** 2: Scheduled only		
9.1	[6-0A]	Comfort setpoint	R/W	30~[6-0E]°C, step: 1°C **60°C**		
9.1	[6-0B]	Eco setpoint	R/W	30~min(50, [6-0E])°C, step: 1°C **45°C**		
9.1	[6-0C]	Reheat setpoint	R/W	30~min(50, [6-0E])°C, step: 1°C **45°C**		
	└ Domestic hot water					
9.2.1	[E-05] [E-06] [E-07]	Domestic hot water	R/W	**0: No DHW (*4)** 2: EKHW (*4) **3: Integrated (*5)** 7: EKHWP (*4)		
9.2.2	[D-02]	DHW pump	R/W	**0: No** 1: Secondary rtrn 2: Disinf. Shunt		
9.2.4	[D-07]	Solar	R/W	**0: No** 1: Yes		
	└ Back up heater					
9.3.1	[E-03]	BUH type	R/O	**2: 3V (*1)** **3: 6V (*2)** **4: 9W (*3)**		
9.3.2	[5-0D]	Voltage	R/W (*2) R/O (*1) (*3)	**0: 230V, 1~ (*1) (*2)** 1: 230V, 3~ (*2) **2: 400V, 3~ (*3)**		
9.3.3	[4-0A]	Configuration	R/W	**0: 1 (*1)** **1: 1/1+2 (*2) (*3)** 2: 1/2 3: 1/2 + 1/1+2 in emergency		
9.3.4	[6-03]	Capacity step 1	R/W	0~10kW, step: 0,2kW 2**kW (*2)** **3kW (*1)(*3)**		
9.3.5	[6-04]	Additional capacity step 2	R/O (*1) R/W (*2) (*3)	0~10kW, step: 0,2kW **0kW (*1)** **4kW (*2)** **6kW (*3)**		
9.3.6	[5-00]	Equilibrium	R/W	0: Allowed **1: Not allowed**		
9.3.7	[5-01]	Equilibrium temperature	R/W	-15~35°C, step: 1°C **0°C**		
9.3.8	[4-00]	Operation	R/W	0: Disabled **1: Enabled** 2: Only DHW		
	└ Booster heater					
9.4.1	[6-02]	Capacity	R/W	0~10kW, step: 0,2kW **3kW (*4)** **0kW (*5)**		
9.4.3	[8-03]	BSH eco timer	R/W	20~95 min, step: 5 min **50 min**		
9.4.4	[4-03]	Operation	R/W	0: Restricted 1: Allowed 2: Overlap **3: Compressor off** 4: Legionella only		
	└ Emergency					
9.5.1	[4-06]	Emergency	R/W	0: Manual 1: Automatic(normal SH/DHW ON) 2: Auto red SH/DHW ON **3: Auto red SH/DHW OFF** 4: SH ON/DHW OFF		
9.5.2	[7-06]	HP Forced OFF	R/W	**0: Disabled** 1: Enabled		
	└ Balancing					
9.6.1	[5-02]	Space heating priority	R/W	**0: Disabled** 1: Enabled		
9.6.2	[5-03]	Priority temperature	R/W	-15~35°C, step: 1°C **0°C**		
9.6.3	[5-04]	Offset BSH setpoint	R/W	0~20°C, step: 1°C **10°C**		
9.6.4	[8-02]	Anti-recycle timer	R/W	0~10 hour, step: 0,5 hour **0,5 hour [E-07]=1** **3 hour [E-07]≠1**		
9.6.5	[8-00]	Minimum running timer	R/W	0~20 min, step 1 min **1 min**		
9.6.6	[8-01]	Maximum running timer	R/W	5~95 min, step: 5 min **30 min**		
9.6.7	[8-04]	Additional timer	R/W	0~95 min, step: 5 min **95 min**		
Installer settings						
9.7	[4-04]	Water pipe freeze prevention		0: Intermittent 1: Continuous **2: Off**		
	└ Benefit kWh power supply					

(*1) *3V_(*2) *6V_
(*3) *9W_(*4) EHB*_
(*5) EHV*_
(*6) *X*_(*7) *H*

(#) Setting is not applicable for this unit.

Field settings table					Installer setting at variance with default value	
Breadcrumb	Field code	Setting name		Range, step **Default value**	Date	Value
9.8.2	[D-00]	Allow heater	R/W	**0: None** 1: BSH only 2: BUH only 3: All heaters		
9.8.3	[D-05]	Allow pump	R/W	0: Forced off **1: As normal**		
9.8.4	[D-01]	Benefit kWh power supply	R/W	**0: No** 1: Active open 2: Active closed 3: Smart grid		
9.8.6		Allow electric heaters		0: No **1: Yes**		
9.8.8		Limit setting kW		0~20 kW, step: 0,5 kW **20 kW**		
└ Power consumption control						
9.9.1	[4-08]	Power consumption control	R/W	**0: No limitation** 1: Continuous 2: Digital inputs		
9.9.2	[4-09]	Type	R/W	0: Current **1: Power**		
9.9.3	[5-05]	Limit	R/W	0~50 A, step: 1 A **50 A**		
9.9.4	[5-05]	Limit 1	R/W	0~50 A, step: 1 A **50 A**		
9.9.5	[5-06]	Limit 2	R/W	0~50 A, step: 1 A **50 A**		
9.9.6	[5-07]	Limit 3	R/W	0~50 A, step: 1 A **50 A**		
9.9.7	[5-08]	Limit 4	R/W	0~50 A, step: 1 A **50 A**		
9.9.8	[5-09]	Limit	R/W	0~20 kW, step: 0,5 kW **20 kW**		
9.9.9	[5-09]	Limit 1	R/W	0~20 kW, step: 0,5 kW **20 kW**		
9.9.A	[5-0A]	Limit 2	R/W	0~20 kW, step: 0,5 kW **20 kW**		
9.9.B	[5-0B]	Limit 3	R/W	0~20 kW, step: 0,5 kW **20 kW**		
9.9.C	[5-0C]	Limit 4	R/W	0~20 kW, step: 0,5 kW **20 kW**		
9.9.D	[4-01]	Priority heater		**0: None** 1: BSH 2: BUH		
└ Energy metering						
9.A.1	[D-08]	Electricity meter 1	R/W	**0: No** 1: 0,1 pulse/kWh 2: 1 pulse/kWh 3: 10 pulse/kWh 4: 100 pulse/kWh 5: 1000 pulse/kWh		
9.A.2	[D-09]	Electricity meter 2	R/W	**0: No** 1: 0,1 pulse/kWh 2: 1 pulse/kWh 3: 10 pulse/kWh 4: 100 pulse/kWh 5: 1000 pulse/kWh		
└ Sensors						
9.B.1	[C-08]	External sensor	R/W	**0: No** 1: Outdoor sensor 2: Room sensor		
9.B.2	[2-0B]	Ext. amb. sensor offset	R/W	-5~5°C, step: 0,5°C **0°C**		
9.B.3	[1-0A]	Averaging time	R/W	**0: No averaging** 1: 12 hours 2: 24 hours 3: 48 hours 4: 72 hours		
└ Bivalent						
9.C.1	[C-02]	Bivalent	R/W	**0: No** 1: Bivalent		
9.C.2	[7-05]	Boiler efficiency	R/W	**0: Very high** 1: High 2: Medium 3: Low 4: Very low		
9.C.3	[C-03]	Temperature	R/W	-25~25°C, step: 1°C **0°C**		
9.C.4	[C-04]	Hysteresis	R/W	2~10°C, step 1°C **3°C**		
Installer settings						
9.D	[C-09]	Alarm output	R/W	**0: Normally open** 1: Normally closed		
9.E	[3-00]	Auto restart	R/W	0: No **1: Yes**		
9.F	[E-08]	Power saving function	R/W	0: Disabled **1: Enabled**		
9.G		Disable protections	R/W	0: No **1: Yes**		
└ Overview field settings						
9.I	[0-00]	Leaving water value for high ambient temp. for LWT add zone heating WD curve.	R/W	[9-05]~min(45,[9-06])°C, step: 1°C **35°C**		
9.I	[0-01]	Leaving water value for low ambient temp. for LWT add zone heating WD curve.	R/W	[9-05]~[9-06]°C, step: 1°C **50°C**		
9.I	[0-02]	High ambient temp. for LWT add zone heating WD curve.	R/W	10~25°C, step: 1°C **15°C**		
9.I	[0-03]	Low ambient temp. for LWT add zone heating WD curve.	R/W	-40~5°C, step: 1°C **-10°C**		
9.I	[0-04]	Leaving water value for high ambient temp. for LWT add zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	[9-07]~[9-08]°C, step: 1°C **8°C**		
9.I	[0-05]	Leaving water value for low ambient temp. for LWT add zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	[9-07]~[9-08]°C, step: 1°C **12°C**		
9.I	[0-06]	High ambient temp. for LWT add zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	25~43°C, step: 1°C **35°C**		

(*1) *3V_(*2) *6V_
(*3) *9W_(*4) EHB*_
(*5) EHV*_
(*6) *X*_(*7) *H*

(#) Setting is not applicable for this unit.

Field settings table					Installer setting at variance with default value	
Breadcrumb	Field code	Setting name		Range, step **Default value**	Date	Value
9.I	[0-07]	Low ambient temp. for LWT add zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	10~25°C, step: 1°C **20°C**		
9.I	[0-0B]	Leaving water value for high ambient temp. for DHW WD curve.	R/W	35~[6-0E]°C, step: 1°C **55°C**		
9.I	[0-0C]	Leaving water value for low ambient temp. for DHW WD curve.	R/W	45~[6-0E]°C, step: 1°C 60**°C**		
9.I	[0-0D]	High ambient temp. for DHW WD curve.	R/W	10~25°C, step: 1°C **15°C**		
9.I	[0-0E]	Low ambient temp. for DHW WD curve.	R/W	-40~5°C, step: 1°C **-10°C**		
9.I	[1-00]	Low ambient temp. for LWT main zone heating WD curve.	R/W	-40~5°C, step: 1°C **-10°C**		
9.I	[1-01]	High ambient temp. for LWT main zone heating WD curve.	R/W	10~25°C, step: 1°C **15°C**		
9.I	[1-02]	Leaving water value for low ambient temp. for LWT main zone heating WD curve.	R/W	[9-01]~[9-00], step: 1°C **35°C**		
9.I	[1-03]	Leaving water value for high ambient temp. for LWT main zone heating WD curve.	R/W	[9-01]~min(45, [9-00])°C , step: 1°C **25°C**		
9.I	[1-04]	Weather dependent cooling of the main leaving water temperature zone.	R/W	0: Disabled **1: Enabled**		
9.I	[1-05]	Weather dependent cooling of the additional leaving water temperature zone	R/W	0: Disabled **1: Enabled**		
9.I	[1-06]	Low ambient temp. for LWT main zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	10~25°C, step: 1°C **20°C**		
9.I	[1-07]	High ambient temp. for LWT main zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	25~43°C, step: 1°C **35°C**		
9.I	[1-08]	Leaving water value for low ambient temp. for LWT main zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	[9-03]~[9-02]°C, step: 1°C **22°C**		
9.I	[1-09]	Leaving water value for high ambient temp. for LWT main zone cooling WD curve.	R/W	[9-03]~[9-02]°C, step: 1°C **18°C**		
9.I	[1-0A]	What is the averaging time for the outdoor temp?	R/W	**0: No averaging** 1: 12 hours 2: 24 hours 3: 48 hours 4: 72 hours		
9.I	[1-0B]	What is the desired delta T in heating for the main zone?	R/W	3~10°C, step: 1°C **5°C**		
9.I	[1-0C]	What is the desired delta T in heating for the additional zone?	R/W	3~10°C, step: 1°C **5°C**		
9.I	[1-0D]	What is the desired delta T in cooling for the main zone?	R/W	3~10°C, step: 1°C **5°C**		
9.I	[1-0E]	What is the desired delta T in cooling for the additional zone?	R/W	3~10°C, step: 1°C **5°C**		
9.I	[2-00]	When should the disinfection function be executed?	R/W	0: Each day 1: Monday 2: Tuesday 3: Wednesday 4: Thursday **5: Friday** 6: Saturday 7: Sunday		
9.I	[2-01]	Should the disinfection function be executed?	R/W	0: No **1: Yes**		
9.I	[2-02]	When should the disinfection function start?	R/W	0~23 hour, step: 1 hour **1**		
9.I	[2-03]	What is the disinfection target temperature?	R/W	[E-07]≠1 : 55~75°C, step: 5°C **70°C** [E-07]=1 : 60°C **60°C**		
9.I	[2-04]	How long must the tank temperature be maintained?	R/W	[E-07]≠1: 5~60 min, step: 5 min **10 min** [E-07]=1: 40~60 min, step: 5 min **40 min**		
9.I	[2-05]	Room antifrost temperature	R/W	4~16°C, step: 1°C **12°C**		
9.I	[2-06]	Room frost protection	R/W	0: Disabled **1: Enabled**		
9.I	[2-09]	Adjust the offset on the measured room temperature	R/W	-5~5°C, step: 0,5°C **0°C**		
9.I	[2-0A]	Adjust the offset on the measured room temperature	R/W	-5~5°C, step: 0,5°C **0°C**		
9.I	[2-0B]	What is the required offset on the measured outdoor temp.?	R/W	-5~5°C, step: 0,5°C **0°C**		
9.I	[2-0C]	What emitter type is connected to the main LWT zone?	R/W	**0: Underfloor heating** 1: Fancoil unit 2: Radiator		
9.I	[2-0D]	What emitter type is connected to the additional LWT zone?	R/W	**0: Underfloor heating** 1: Fancoil unit 2: Radiator		
9.I	[2-0E]	What is the maximum allowed current over the heatpump ?	R/W	0~50 A, step: 1 A **50 A**		
9.I	[3-00]	Is auto restart of the unit allowed?	R/W	0: No **1: Yes**		
9.I	[3-01]	--		**0**		
9.I	[3-02]	--		**1**		
9.I	[3-03]	--		**4**		
9.I	[3-04]	--		**2**		
9.I	[3-05]	--		**1**		
9.I	[3-06]	What is the maximum desired room temperature in heating?	R/W	18~30°C, step: 1°C **30°C**		
9.I	[3-07]	What is the mimimum desired room temperature in heating?	R/W	12~18°C, step: 1°C **12°C**		
9.I	[3-08]	What is the maximum desired room temperature in cooling?	R/W	25~35°C, step: 1°C **35°C**		
9.I	[3-09]	What is the minimum desired room temperature in cooling?	R/W	15~25°C, step: 1°C **15°C**		
9.I	[4-00]	What is the BUH operation mode?	R/W	0: Disabled **1: Enabled** 2: Only DHW		
9.I	[4-01]	Which electric heater has priority?	R/W	**0: None** 1: BSH 2: BUH		

(*1) *3V_(*2) *6V_
(*3) *9W_(*4) EHB*_
(*5) EHV*_
(*6) *X*_(*7) *H*

(#) Setting is not applicable for this unit.

Field settings table					Installer setting at variance with default value	
Breadcrumb	Field code	Setting name		Range, step **Default value**	Date	Value
9.I	[4-02]	Below which outdoor temperature is heating allowed?	R/W	14~35°C, step: 1°C **22°C**		
9.I	[4-03]	Operation permission of the booster heater.	R/W	0: Restricted 1: Allowed 2: Overlap **3: Compressor off** 4: Legionella only		
9.I	[4-04]	Water pipe freeze prevention		0: Intermittent 1: Continuous **2: Off**		
9.I	[4-05]	--		**0**		
9.I	[4-06]	Emergency	R/W	0: Manual 1: Automatic(normal SH/DHW ON) 2: Auto red SH/DHW ON **3: Auto red SH/DHW OFF** 4: SH ON/DHW OFF		
9.I	[4-07]	--		**6**		
9.I	[4-08]	Which power limitation mode is required on the system?	R/W	**0: No limitation** 1: Continuous 2: Digital inputs		
9.I	[4-09]	Which power limitation type is required?	R/W	0: Current **1: Power**		
9.I	[4-0A]	Backup heater configuration	R/W	**0: 1 (*1)** **1: 1/1+2 (*2) (*3)** 2: 1/2 3: 1/2 + 1/1+2 in emergency		
9.I	[4-0B]	Automatic cooling/heating changeover hysteresis.	R/W	1~10°C, step: 0,5°C **1°C**		
9.I	[4-0D]	Automatic cooling/heating changeover offset.	R/W	1~10°C, step: 0,5°C **3°C**		
9.I	[4-0E]	--		**6**		
9.I	[5-00]	Is backup heater operation allowed above equilibrium temperature during space heating operation?	R/W	0: Allowed **1: Not allowed**		
9.I	[5-01]	What is the equilibrium temperature for the building?	R/W	-15~35°C, step: 1°C **0°C**		
9.I	[5-02]	Space heating priority.	R/W	**0: Disabled** 1: Enabled		
9.I	[5-03]	Space heating priority temperature.	R/W	-15~35°C, step: 1°C **0°C**		
9.I	[5-04]	Set point correction for domestic hot water temperature.	R/W	0~20°C, step: 1°C **10°C**		
9.I	[5-05]	What is the requested limit for DI1?	R/W	0~50 A, step: 1 A **50 A**		
9.I	[5-06]	What is the requested limit for DI2?	R/W	0~50 A, step: 1 A **50 A**		
9.I	[5-07]	What is the requested limit for DI3?	R/W	0~50 A, step: 1 A **50 A**		
9.I	[5-08]	What is the requested limit for DI4?	R/W	0~50 A, step: 1 A **50 A**		
9.I	[5-09]	What is the requested limit for DI1?	R/W	0~20 kW, step: 0,5 kW **20 kW**		
9.I	[5-0A]	What is the requested limit for DI2?	R/W	0~20 kW, step: 0,5 kW **20 kW**		
9.I	[5-0B]	What is the requested limit for DI3?	R/W	0~20 kW, step: 0,5 kW **20 kW**		
9.I	[5-0C]	What is the requested limit for DI4?	R/W	0~20 kW, step: 0,5 kW **20 kW**		
9.I	[5-0D]	Backup heater voltage	R/W (*2) R/O (*1) (*3)	**0: 230V, 1~ (*1) (*2)** 1: 230V, 3~ (*2) **2: 400V, 3~ (*3)**		
9.I	[5-0E]	--		**1**		
9.I	[6-00]	The temperature difference determining the heat pump ON temperature.	R/W	2~40°C, step: 1°C **25°C**		
9.I	[6-01]	The temperature difference determining the heat pump OFF temperature.	R/W	0~10°C, step: 1°C **2°C**		
9.I	[6-02]	What is the capacity of the booster heater?	R/W	0~10kW, step: 0,2kW **3kW**		
9.I	[6-03]	What is the capacity of the backup heater step 1?	R/W	0~10kW, step: 0,2kW 2**kW (*2)** **3kW (*1)(*3)**		
9.I	[6-04]	What is the capacity of the backup heater step 2?	R/O (*1) R/W (*2) (*3)	0~10kW, step: 0,2kW **0kW (*1)** **4kW (*2)** **6kW (*3)**		
9.I	[6-05]	--		**0**		
9.I	[6-06]	--		**0**		
9.I	[6-07]	What is the capacity of the bottom plate heater?	R/W	0~200W, step: 10W **0W**		
9.I	[6-08]	What is the hysteresis to be used in reheat mode?	R/W	**2~20°C, step: 1°C** **10°C**		
9.I	[6-09]	--		**0**		
9.I	[6-0A]	What is the desired comfort storage temperature?	R/W	30~[6-0E]°C, step: 1°C **60°C**		
9.I	[6-0B]	What is the desired eco storage temperature?	R/W	30~min(50, [6-0E])°C, step: 1°C **45°C**		
9.I	[6-0C]	What is the desired reheat temperature?	R/W	30~min(50, [6-0E])°C, step: 1°C **45°C**		
9.I	[6-0D]	What is the desired DHW production type?	R/W	0: Reheat only **1: Reheat + sched.** 2: Scheduled only		
9.I	[6-0E]	What is the maximum temperature setpoint?	R/W	(*4) : 40~75°C, step: 1°C **60°C** [E-07]=0 (*4) : 40~80°C, step: 1°C **80°C** [E-07]=5 (*5) : 40~60°C, step: 1°C **60°C**		
9.I	[7-00]	Domestic hot water booster heater overshoot temperature.	R/W	0~4°C, step: 1°C **0°C**		
9.I	[7-01]	Domestic hot water booster heater hysteresis.	R/W	2~40°C, step: 1°C **2°C**		
9.I	[7-02]	How many leaving water temperature zones are there?	R/W	**0: 1 LWT zone** 1: 2 LWT zones		
9.I	[7-03]	--		**2.5**		

(*1) *3V_(*2) *6V_
(*3) *9W_(*4) EHB*_
(*5) EHV*_
(*6) *X*_(*7) *H*

(#) Setting is not applicable for this unit.

Field settings table					Installer setting at variance with default value	
Breadcrumb	Field code	Setting name		Range, step **Default value**	Date	Value
9.I	[7-04]	--		**0**		
9.I	[7-05]	Boiler efficiency	R/W	**0: Very high** 1: High 2: Medium 3: Low 4: Very low		
9.I	[7-06]	HP Forced OFF	R/W	**0: Disabled** 1: Enabled		
9.I	[7-07]	BBR16 activation	R/W	**0: Disabled** 1: Enabled		
9.I	[8-00]	Minimum running time for domestic hot water operation.	R/W	0~20 min, step 1 min **1 min**		
9.I	[8-01]	Maximum running time for domestic hot water operation.	R/W	5~95 min, step: 5 min **30 min**		
9.I	[8-02]	Anti-recycling time.	R/W	0~10 hour, step: 0,5 hour **0,5 hour [E-07]=1** **3 hour [E-07]≠1**		
9.I	[8-03]	Booster heater delay timer.	R/W	20~95 min, step: 5 min **50 min**		
9.I	[8-04]	Additional running time for the maximum running time.	R/W	0~95 min, step: 5 min **95 min**		
9.I	[8-05]	Allow modulation of the LWT to control the room temp?	R/W	**0: No** 1: Yes		
9.I	[8-06]	Leaving water temperature maximum modulation.	R/W	0~10°C, step: 1°C **5°C**		
9.I	[8-07]	What is the desired comfort main LWT in cooling?	R/W	[9-03]~[9-02], step: 1°C **18°C**		
9.I	[8-08]	What is the desired eco main LWT in cooling?	R/W	[9-03]~[9-02], step: 1°C **20°C**		
9.I	[8-09]	What is the desired comfort main LWT in heating?	R/W	[9-01]~[9-00], step: 1°C **35°C**		
9.I	[8-0A]	What is the desired eco main LWT in heating?	R/W	[9-01]~[9-00], step: 1°C **33°C**		
9.I	[8-0B]	--		**13**		
9.I	[8-0C]	--		**10**		
9.I	[8-0D]	--		**16**		
9.I	[9-00]	What is the maximum desired LWT for main zone in heating?	R/W	[2-0C]=2: 37~65, step: 1°C **55°C** [2-0C]≠2: 37~55, step: 1°C **55°C**		
9.I	[9-01]	What is the mimimum desired LWT for main zone in heating?	R/W	15~37°C, step: 1°C **25°C**		
9.I	[9-02]	What is the maximum desired LWT for main zone in cooling?	R/W	18~22°C, step: 1°C **22°C**		
9.I	[9-03]	What is the mimimum desired LWT for main zone in cooling?	R/W	5~18°C, step: 1°C **5°C**		
9.I	[9-04]	Leaving water temperature overshoot temperature.	R/W	1~4°C, step: 1°C **1°C**		
9.I	[9-05]	What is the mimimum desired LWT for add. zone in heating?	R/W	15~37°C, step: 1°C **25°C**		
9.I	[9-06]	What is the maximum desired LWT for add. zone in heating?	R/W	[2-0D]=2: 37~65, step: 1°C **55°C** [2-0D]≠2: 37~55, step: 1°C **55°C**		
9.I	[9-07]	What is the mimimum desired LWT for add. zone in cooling?	R/W	5~18°C, step: 1°C **5°C**		
9.I	[9-08]	What is the maximum desired LWT for add. zone in cooling?	R/W	18~22°C, step: 1°C **22°C**		
9.I	[9-09]	What is the allowed undershoot in cooling?	R/W	1~18°C, step: 1°C **18°C**		
9.I	[9-0A]	Heating comfort setpoint	R/W	[3-07]～[3-06]°C, step: 0,5°C **23°C**		
9.I	[9-0B]	Cooling comfort setpoint	R/W	[3-09]～[3-08]°C, step: 0,5°C **23°C**		
9.I	[9-0C]	Room temperature hysteresis.	R/W	1~6°C, step: 0,5°C **1 °C**		
9.I	[9-0D]	Pump speed limitation	R/W	0~8, step:1 0 : No limitation 1~4 : 50~80% 5~8 : 50~80% during sampling **6**		
9.I	[9-0E]	--		**6**		
9.I	[C-00]	Domestic heating water priority.	R/W	**0: Solar priority** 1: Heat pump priority		
9.I	[C-01]	--		**0**		
9.I	[C-02]	Is an external backup heat source connected?	R/W	**0: No** 1: Bivalent		
9.I	[C-03]	Bivalent activation temperature.	R/W	-25~25°C, step: 1°C 0°C		
9.I	[C-04]	Bivalent hysteresis temperature.	R/W	2~10°C, step 1°C **3°C**		
9.I	[C-05]	What is the thermo request contact type for the main zone?	R/W	0: - 1: 1 contact **2: 2 contacts**		
9.I	[C-06]	What is the thermo request contact type for the add. zone?	R/W	0: - 1: 1 contact **2: 2 contacts**		
9.I	[C-07]	What is the unit control method in space operation?	R/W	**0: LWT control** 1: Ext RT control 2: RT control		
9.I	[C-08]	Which type of external sensor is installed?	R/W	**0: No** 1: Outdoor sensor 2: Room sensor		
9.I	[C-09]	What is the required alarm output contact type?	R/W	**0: Normally open** 1: Normally closed		
9.I	[C-0A]	--		**0**		
9.I	[C-0B]	--		**0**		
9.I	[C-0C]	--		**0**		
9.I	[C-0D]	--		**0**		

(*1) *3V_(*2) *6V_
(*3) *9W_(*4) EHB*_
(*5) EHV*_
(*6) *X*_(*7) *H*

(#) Setting is not applicable for this unit.

Field settings table					Installer setting at variance with default value	
Breadcrumb	Field code	Setting name		Range, step **Default value**	Date	Value
9.I	[C-0E]	--		**0**		
9.I	[D-00]	Which heaters are permitted if prefer. kWh rate PS is cut?	R/W	**0: None** 1: BSH only 2: BUH only 3: All heaters		
9.I	[D-01]	Contact type of preferential kWh rate PS installation?	R/W	**0: No** 1: Active open 2: Active closed 3: Smart grid		
9.I	[D-02]	Which type of DHW pump is installed?	R/W	**0: No** 1: Secondary rtrn 2: Disinf. Shunt		
9.I	[D-03]	Leaving water temperature compensation around 0°C.	R/W	0: No **1: increase 2°C, span 4°C** 2: increase 4°C, span 4°C 3: increase 2°C, span 8°C 4: increase 4°C, span 8°C		
9.I	[D-04]	Is a demand PCB connected?	R/W	**0: No** 1: Pwr consmp ctrl		
9.I	[D-05]	Is the pump allowed to run if prefer. kWh rate PS is cut?	R/W	0: Forced off **1: As normal**		
9.I	[D-07]	Is a solar kit connected?	R/W	**0: No** 1: Yes		
9.I	[D-08]	Is an external kWh meter used for power measurement?	R/W	**0: No** 1: 0,1 pulse/kWh 2: 1 pulse/kWh 3: 10 pulse/kWh 4: 100 pulse/kWh 5: 1000 pulse/kWh		
9.I	[D-09]	Is an external kWh meter used for power measurement?	R/W	**0: No** 1: 0,1 pulse/kWh 2: 1 pulse/kWh 3: 10 pulse/kWh 4: 100 pulse/kWh 5: 1000 pulse/kWh 6: 100 pulse/kWh (PV meter) 7: 1000 pulse/kWh (PV meter) 8: 1 pulse/m³ (gas meter) 9: 10 pulses/m³ (gas meter) 10: 100 pulses/m³ (gas meter)		
9.I	[D-0A]	--		**0**		
9.I	[D-0B]	--		**2**		
9.I	[D-0C]	--		**0**		
9.I	[D-0D]	--		**0**		
9.I	[D-0E]	--		**0**		
9.I	[E-00]	Which type of unit is installed?	R/O	0~5 **0: LT split**		
9.I	[E-01]	Which type of compressor is installed?	R/O	**0**		
9.I	[E-02]	What is the indoor unit software type?	R/W (*6) R/O (*7)	**0: Reversible (*6)** **1: Heating only (*7)**		
9.I	[E-03]	What is the number of backup heater steps?	R/O	**2: 3V (*1)** **3: 6V (*2)** **4: 9W (*3)**		
9.I	[E-04]	Is the power saving function available on the outdoor unit?	R/O	0: No **1: Yes**		
9.I	[E-05]	Can the system prepare domestic hot water?	R/W	**0: No (*4)** **1: Yes (*5)**		
9.I	[E-06]	Is a DHW tank installed in the system?	R/O	0: No **1: Yes**		
9.I	[E-07]	What kind of DHW tank is installed?	R/W	0~6 **0: EKHW (*4)** **1: Integrated (*5)** 5: EKHWP (*4)		
9.I	[E-08]	Power saving function for outdoor unit.	R/W	0: Disabled **1: Enabled**		
9.I	[E-09]	--		**1**		
9.I	[E-0A]	--		**0**		
9.I	[E-0B]	Is a bi-zone kit installed?		**0**		
9.I	[E-0C]	--		**0**		
9.I	[E-0D]	Is glycol present in the system?		**0**		
9.I	[E-0E]	--		**0**		
9.I	[F-00]	Pump operation allowed outside range.	R/W	**0: Disabled** 1: Enabled		
9.I	[F-01]	Above which outdoor temperature is cooling allowed?	R/W	10~35°C, step: 1°C **20°C**		
9.I	[F-02]	Bottom plate heater ON temperature.	R/W	3~10°C, step: 1°C **3°C**		
9.I	[F-03]	Bottom plate heater hysteresis.	R/W	2~5°C, step: 1°C **5°C**		
9.I	[F-04]	Is a bottom plate heater connected?	R/W	**0: No** 1: Yes		
9.I	[F-05]	--		**0**		
9.I	[F-09]	Pump operation during flow abnormality.	R/W	**0: Disabled** 1: Enabled		
9.I	[F-0A]	--		**0**		
9.I	[F-0B]	Close shut-off valve during thermo OFF?	R/W	**0: No** 1: Yes		
9.I	[F-0C]	Close shut-off valve during cooling?	R/W	0: No **1: Yes**		
9.I	[F-0D]	What is the pump operation mode?	R/W	0: Continuous **1: Sample** 2: Request		

(*1) *3V_(*2) *6V_
(*3) *9W_(*4) EHB*_
(*5) EHV*_
(*6) *X*_(*7) *H*

(#) Setting is not applicable for this unit.

EAC

DAIKIN EUROPE N.V.

Zandvoordestraat 300, B-8400 Oostende, Belgium

4P629086-1 2020.08